

| | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Insert Function | AutoSum | Recently Used | Financial | Logical | Text | Date & Time | Lookup & Reference | Math & Trig | More Functions |

101 MOST POPULAR EXCEL FORMULAS

| | | | | |
|--|------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| AND | COUNTIF | FORECAST.ETS | LOOKUP | REPT |
| ARRAY FORMULAS | COUNTIFS | FV | LOWER | RIGHT |
| 101 MOST POPULAR EXCEL FORMULAS | | GETPIVOTDATA | MATCH | ROUND |
| | | HLOOKUP | MAX | SEARCH |
| | | HOUR | MAXIFS | SEQUENCE |
| | | HYPERLINK | MEDIAN | SMALL |
| | | IF | MID | SORT |
| | | IFERROR | MIN | SORTBY |
| | | IFS | MINIFS | SUBSTITUTE |
| | | | | SUBTOTAL |
| | | | | SUMIF |
| | | | | SUMIFS |
| | | | SUMPRODUCT | |
| | | | SWITCH | |
| | | | TEXT | |
| | | | TEXTJOIN | |
| | | | TIME | |
| | | | TODAY | |
| | | | TRANSPOSE | |
| | | | TRIM | |
| AVERAGE | DATE | INDEX | MOD | TYPE |
| BETWEEN | DATEDIF | INDEX-MATCH | MONTH | UNIQUE |
| CHOOSE | DATEVALUE | INDIRECT | NETWORKDAYS | UPPER |
| CLEAN | DAY | ISBLANK | OR | VALUE |
| CONCAT | DAY360 | ISERROR | PERCENTAGE | VLOOKUP |
| CONCATENATE | DAYS | ISNUMBER | PROPER | WEEKDAY |
| CONVERT | ENDOFMONTH | ISTEXT | RAND | WEEKNUM |
| COUNT | EXACT | LARGE | RANDARRAY | WORKDAY |
| COUNTA | FILTER | LEFT | RANDBETWEEN | YEAR |
| COUNTBLANK | FIND | LEN | REPLACE | 3D FORMULAS |

COPYRIGHT

SPECIAL SALES

MYEXCELONLINE ACADEMY COURSE

CONNECT WITH US

AUTHOR BIOGRAPHY

HOW TO USE THIS E-BOOK

Formulas VS Functions

FORMULA TIPS

[The Function Wizard](#)

[F9 to Evaluate a Formula](#)

[Named Ranges](#)

[Absolute & Relative References](#)

[Evaluate Formulas Step By Step](#)

[Highlight All Excel Formula Cells](#)

[How to Convert Formulas to Values](#)

[How to Show & Hide Formulas in Excel](#)

[Jump to a Cell Reference in a Formula](#)

LOOKUP FUNCTIONS

[ADDRESS](#)

[CHOOSE](#)

[HLOOKUP](#)

[HYPERLINK](#)

[INDEX](#)

[INDEX-MATCH](#)

[INDIRECT](#)

[LOOKUP](#)

[MATCH](#)

[VLOOKUP](#)

LOGICAL FUNCTIONS

[AND](#)

[IF](#)

[IFERROR](#)

[OR](#)

MATH FUNCTIONS

[COUNT](#)

[COUNTA](#)

[COUNTBLANK](#)

[COUNTIF](#)

COUNTIFS
MOD
PERCENTAGE
RAND
RANDBETWEEN
ROUND
SUBTOTAL
SUMIF
SUMIFS
SUMPRODUCT

STATISTICAL FUNCTIONS

AVERAGE
LARGE
MAX
MEDIAN
MIN
SMALL

DATE & TIME FUNCTIONS

DATE
DATEDIF
DATEVALUE
DAY
DAY360
DAYS
ENDOFMONTH
HOUR
MONTH
NETWORKDAYS
TODAY
WEEKDAY
WEEKNUM
WORKDAY
YEAR

TEXT FUNCTIONS

CLEAN
CONCATENATE
EXACT
FIND
LEFT
LEN
LOWER
MID

[PROPER](#)
[REPLACE](#)
[RIGHT](#)
[SEARCH](#)
[SUBSTITUTE](#)
[TEXT](#)
[TRIM](#)
[UPPER](#)
[VALUE](#)

INFORMATION FUNCTIONS

[ISBLANK](#)
[ISERROR](#)
[ISNUMBER](#)
[ISTEXT](#)
[TYPE](#)

OTHER FUNCTIONS

[FV – Compound Interest](#)
[FV – Monthly Investment](#)

EXCEL 2019

[CONCAT](#)
[IFS](#)
[MAXIFS](#)
[MINIFS](#)
[SWITCH](#)
[TEXTJOIN](#)

OFFICE 365 (AS OF SEPTEMBER 2018)

[FILTER](#)
[RANDARRAY](#)
[SEQUENCE](#)
[SORT](#)
[SORTBY](#)
[UNIQUE](#)

ADVANCED FORMULAS

[3D Formulas](#)
[ARRAY Formulas](#)
[BETWEEN](#)
[Extract First Name from Full Name](#)
[Extract Last Name - REPLACE Function](#)
[GETPIVOTDATA](#)
[IF Combined With The AND Function](#)
[INDEX-MATCH 2 Criteria with Validation](#)

[Match Two Lists With MATCH Function](#)

[Named Ranges with VLOOKUP Function](#)

[REPT](#)

[Sum a Range Using the INDEX Function](#)

[SUMPRODUCT: Sum Multiple Criteria](#)

[SUMPRODUCT: Sum the Top 3 Sales](#)

[TIME – Get Elapsed Time](#)

[TRANSPOSE](#)

[VLOOKUP Approximate Match](#)

[VLOOKUP with a Drop Down List](#)

[VLOOKUP Multiple Columns](#)

[VLOOKUP with Multiple Criteria](#)

COPYRIGHT

Copyright © 2019 by MyExcelOnline.com – Version 1.2019

All rights reserved. This publication is protected by copyright, and permission must be obtained from the publisher prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, email, mechanical, photocopying, recording or likewise.

SPECIAL SALES

For more information about buying this eBook in bulk quantities, or for special sales opportunities (which may include custom cover designs, and content particular to your business or training goals), please send us an email to support@myexcelonline.com

MYEXCELONLINE ACADEMY COURSE

We are offering you access to our online Excel membership course – The MyExcelOnline Academy – **for only \$1 for the first 30 days!**

Click on this [\\$1 Trial link](#) to get access to this special reader offer!

CONNECT WITH US

Website, blog & podcast: <https://www.myexcelonline.com/>

Download Our App: [Android](#) or [iPhone](#)

Email: support@myexcelonline.com



AUTHOR BIOGRAPHY



John Michaloudis is the founder of MyExcelOnline.com. John is currently living in the North of Spain, married and have two beautiful kids. John holds a bachelor's degree in Commerce (Major in Accounting) and speak English/Australian, Greek and Spanish.



Bryan Hong is a contributor of MyExcelOnline.com. He is currently living in the Philippines and is married to his wonderful wife Esther. Bryan is also a Microsoft Certified Systems Engineer with over 10 years of IT and teaching experience!

HOW TO USE THIS E-BOOK

Formulas are one of the most powerful features in Excel and learning how & when to use them will make you into an Excel superstar! There are 483 Functions at the time of publishing this eBook but you only need to know several of these to become efficient at Excel!

To get the most value out of this eBook, we recommend that you download the workbook that pertains to each Function and practice entering the Function in a cell. Then follow our easy to use step by step guide. Make mistakes! That is fine. You may not get it the first time around (we certainly didn't) but when you finally do, you will be a step closer to Excel stardom!

Here is the [download link that has all the workbooks](#) covered in this book. The **Table of Contents** is interactive & will take you to a Function within this eBook!

Formulas VS Functions

You most probably have heard the words Formulas & Functions both being used in Excel. What is the difference between them?

A **Formula** is an expression which calculates the value of a cell. A **Function** is a predefined formula that is made available for you to use in Excel:

FORMULA
= (100+A1)*1.1

FUNCTION
= VLOOKUP()

In this book, we use both terms (function and formula) interchangeably.

Here are several **operators** that you can use in a Formula:

| OPERATOR | MEANING | EXAMPLE |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| + (plus sign) | Addition | =A1+B |
| - (minus sign) | Subtraction | =A-B |
| - (minus sign) | Negation | =-3 |
| * (asterisk) | Multiplication | =3*3 |
| / (forward slash) | Division | =1/3 |
| % (percent sign) | Percent | 30% |
| ^ (caret) | Exponentiation | =3^3 |
| = (equal sign) | Equal to | =A1=B1 |
| > (greater than sign) | Greater than | =A1>B1 |
| < (less than sign) | Less than | =A1<B1 |
| >= (greater than or equal to sign) | Greater than or equal to | =A1>=B1 |
| <= (less than or equal to sign) | Less than or equal to | =A1<=B1 |
| <> (not equal to sign) | Not equal to | =A1<>B1 |
| & (ampersand) | Connects, or concatenates, two values to produce one continuous text value | = "North"&"wind" results in "Northwind" |
| : | Range operator, which produces one reference to all the cells between two references, including the two references. | B5:B15 |
| , | Union operator, which combines multiple references into one reference | =SUM(B5:B15,D5:D15) |
| (space) | Intersection operator, which produces one reference to cells common to the two references | B7:D7 / C6:C8 |

FORMULA TIPS

The Function Wizard

What does it do?

If you are unsure on which formula to use in Excel, Excel has you covered! You can use the **Insert Function Wizard** of Excel to find one for your purpose.

Insert Function



Search for a function:

Type a brief description of what you want to do and then click Go

Go

Or select a category: Text

Select a function:

BAHTTEXT
CHAR
CLEAN
CODE
CONCAT
DOLLAR
EXACT

CLEAN(text)

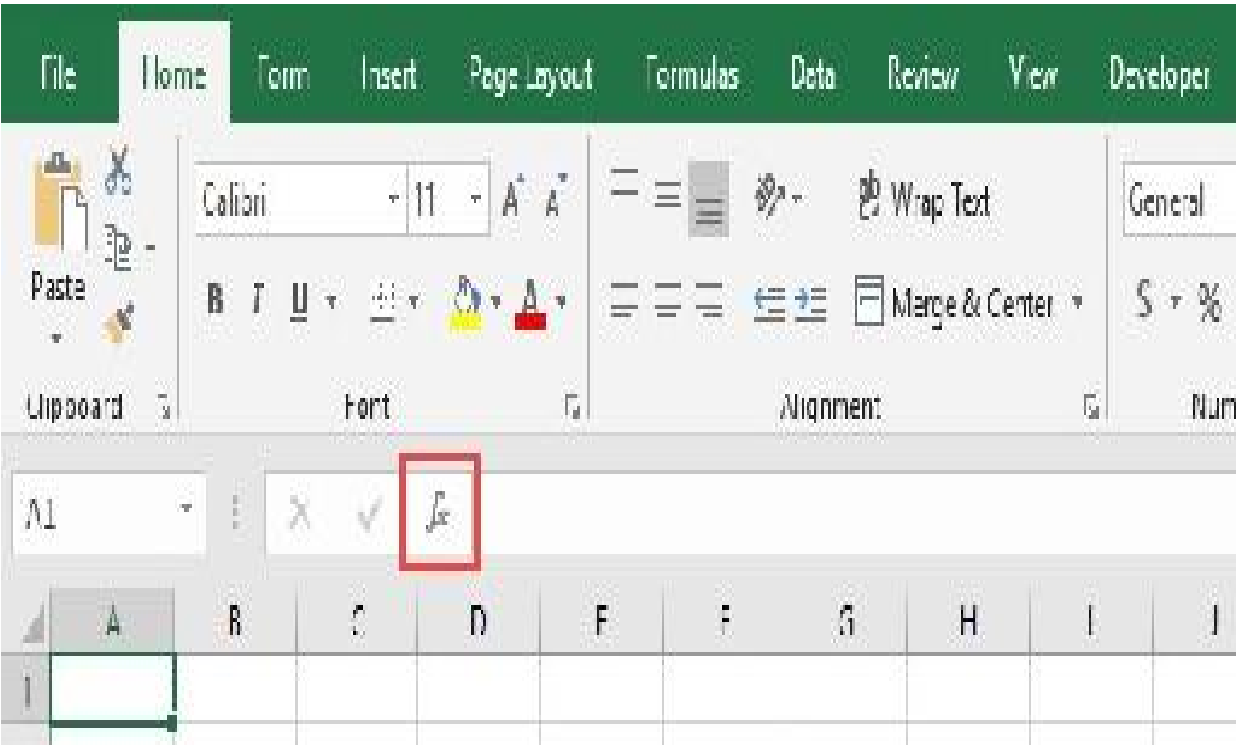
Removes all nonprintable characters from text.

[Help on this function](#)

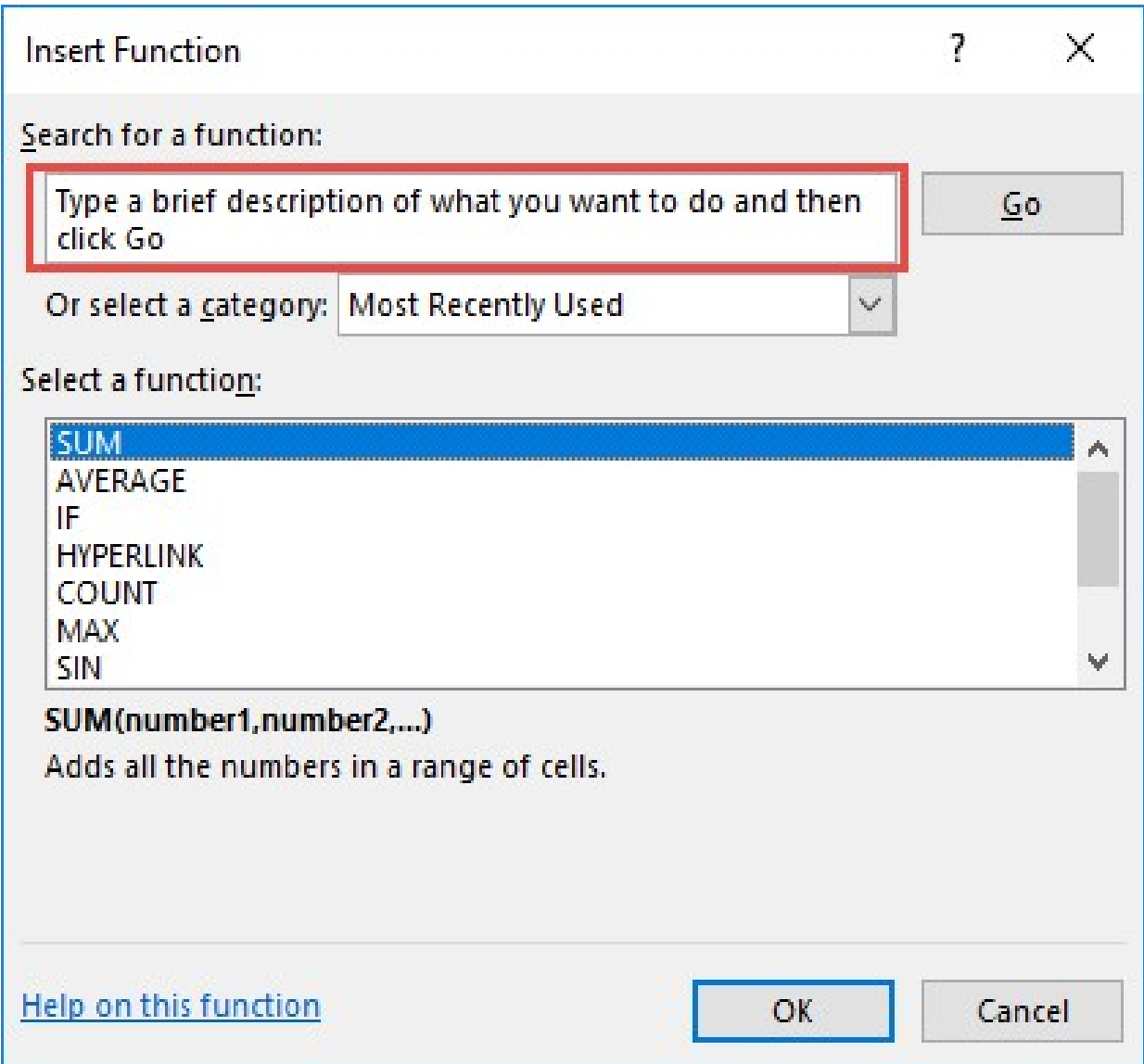
OK

Cancel

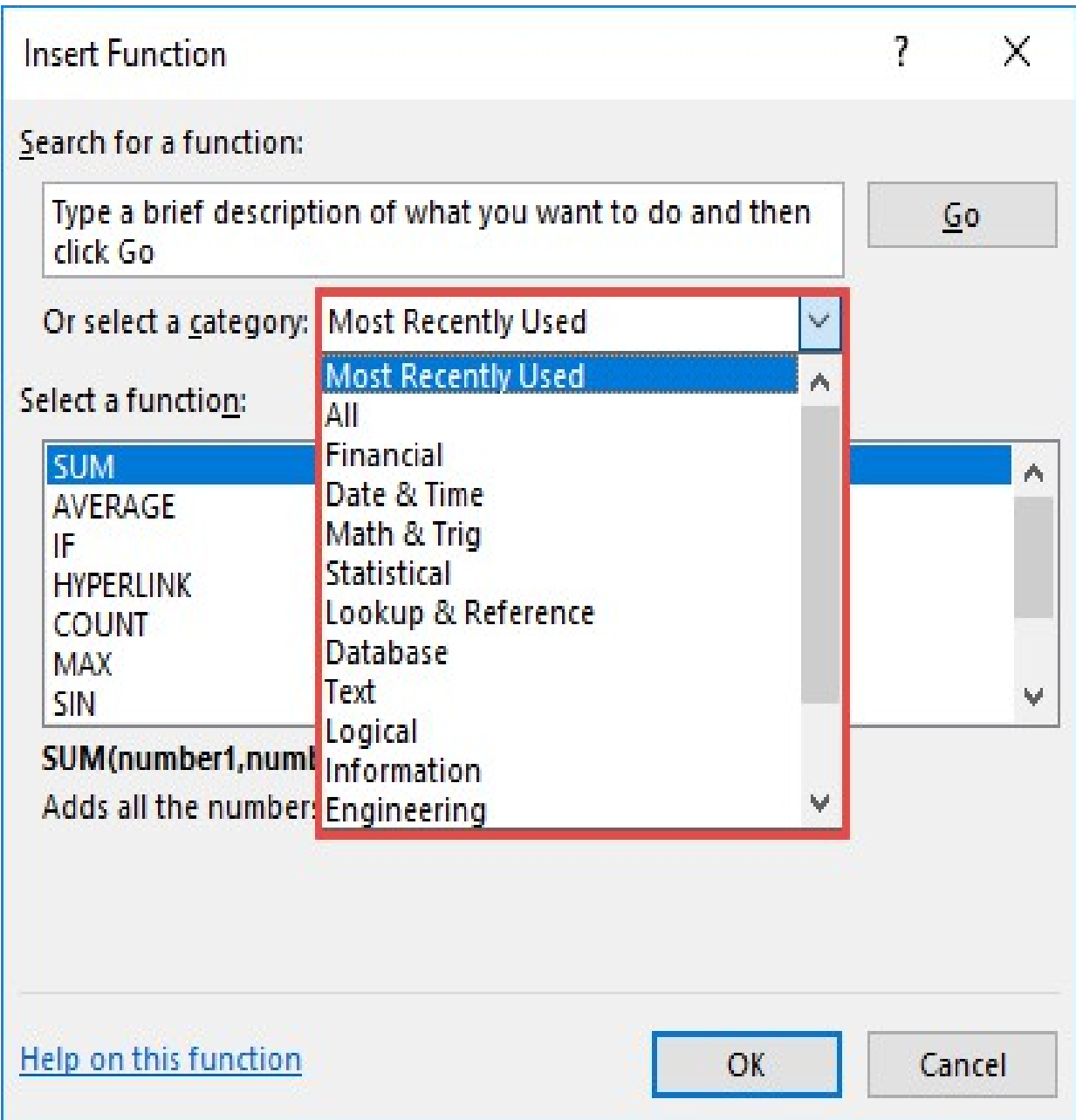
STEP 1: Ensure you have a cell selected and click the Insert Function button depicted as *fx*:



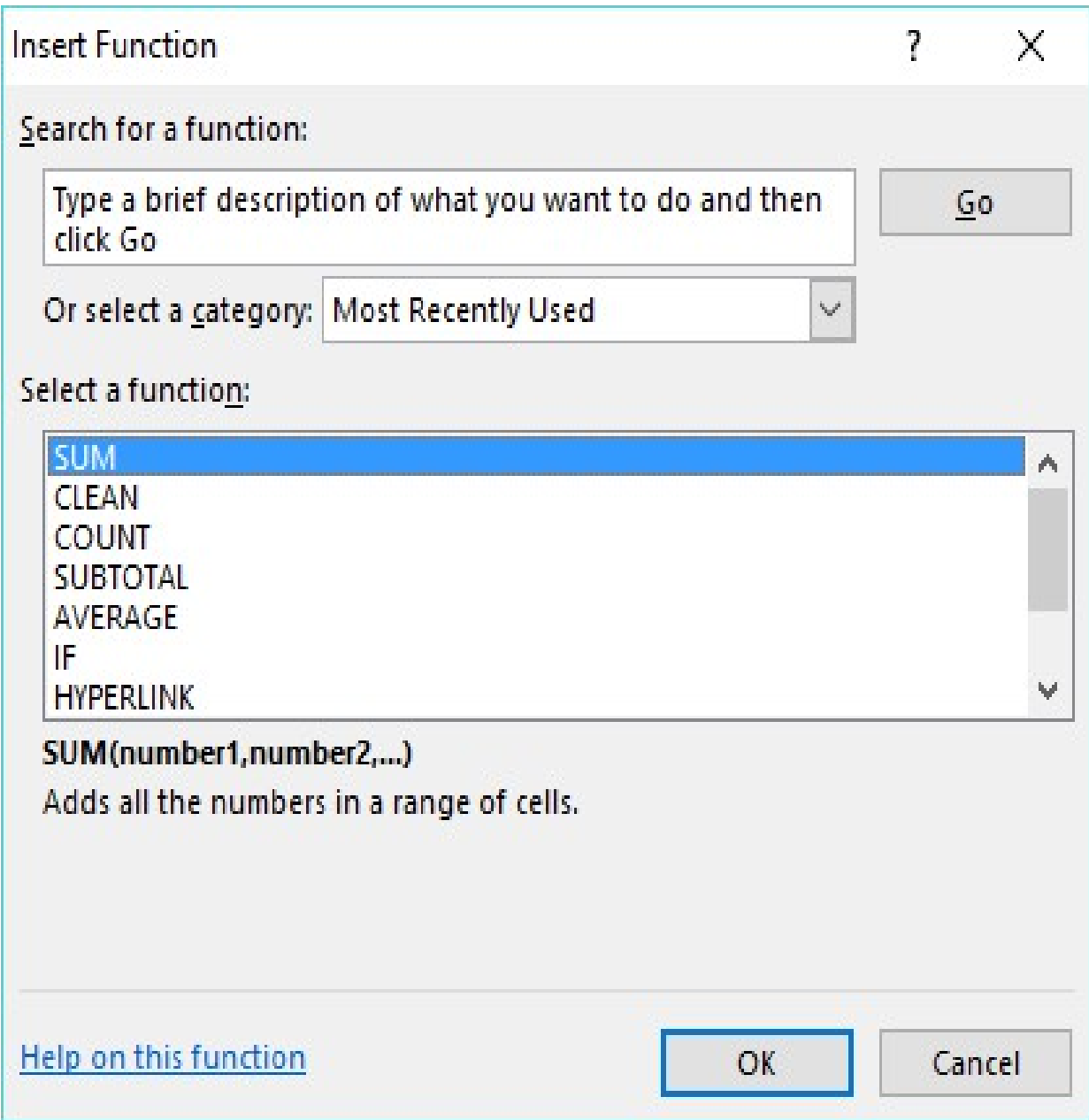
STEP 2: Inside this window, you can try to search for the function:



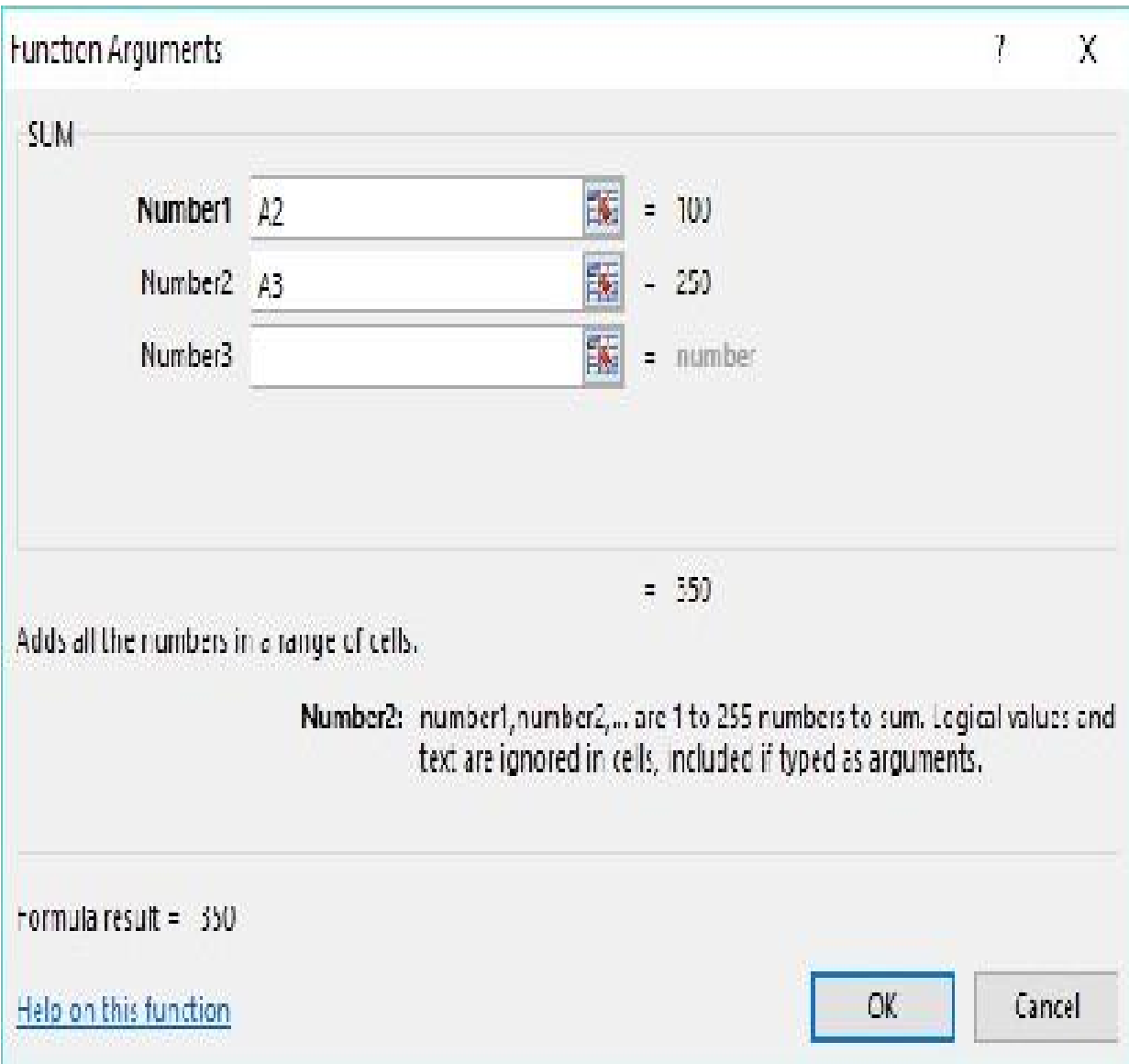
Or filter by category:



STEP 3: Once you have selected the function you want, click OK.



STEP 4: Fill out the arguments of your selected function. Click OK.



Your Excel Formula is now ready!

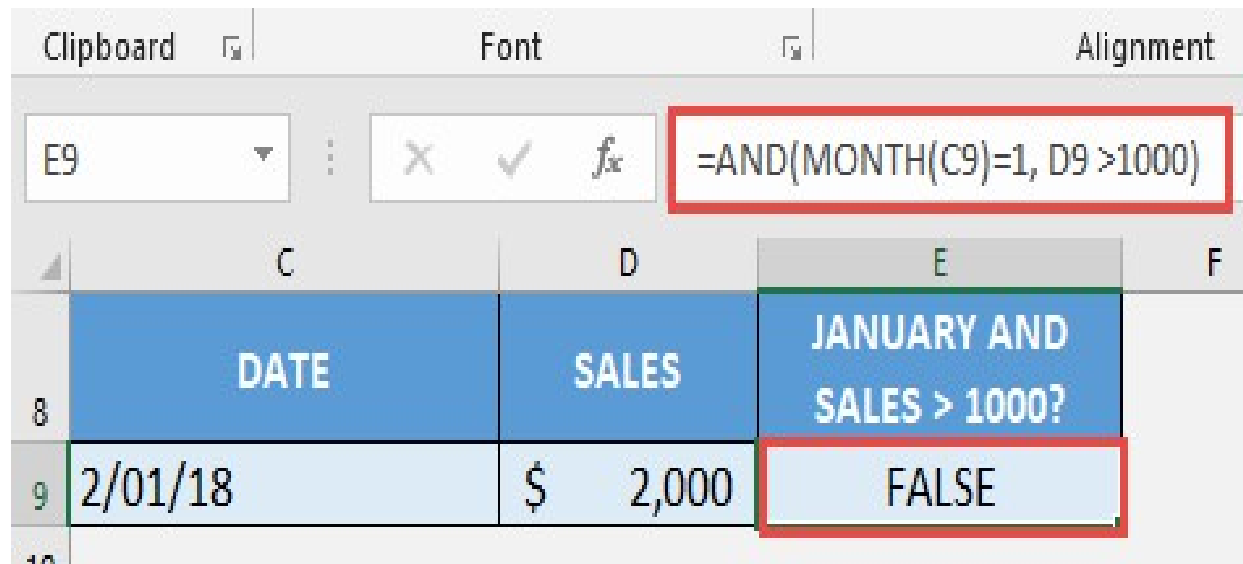
| A1 | | ✕ ✓ <i>fx</i> | | =SUM(A2,A3) | |
|----|-----|---------------|---|-------------|--|
| | A | B | C | D | |
| 1 | 350 | | | | |
| 2 | 100 | | | | |
| 3 | 250 | | | | |

F9 to Evaluate a Formula

What does it do?

Sometimes we need to create complicated formulas, and when that happens it is easy to make mistakes. It becomes hard finding what caused the issue! The fun part is it is easy to evaluate parts of your Formula in Excel by using pressing the **F9** Key!

Our example checks if the date is in the Month of January and has sales greater than 1000. It uses the **AND Function** and we want to understand why it evaluated to **FALSE**.



The screenshot shows the Excel interface. The formula bar at the top displays the formula `=AND(MONTH(C9)=1, D9 >1000)`, which is highlighted with a red box. Below the formula bar, the worksheet grid is visible. The columns are labeled C, D, and E. Row 8 has headers: DATE (C8), SALES (D8), and JANUARY AND SALES > 1000? (E8). Row 9 has data: 2/01/18 (C9), \$ 2,000 (D9), and FALSE (E9). The cell E9 is highlighted with a red box.

| | C | D | E | F |
|---|---------|----------|---------------------------|---|
| 8 | DATE | SALES | JANUARY AND SALES > 1000? | |
| 9 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | FALSE | |

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

STEP 1: Double click or press F2 on the cell that has the formula

| | C | D | E |
|---|---------|----------|-----------------------------|
| 8 | DATE | SALES | JANUARY AND SALES > 1000? |
| 9 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | =AND(MONTH(C9)=1, D9 >1000) |

STEP 2: Select the part of the formula that you want to evaluate first. Let us check the first part: **MONTH(C9)=1**

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------|----------|--|
| 8 | DATE | SALES | JANUARY AND SALES > 1000? |
| 9 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | =AND(MONTH(C9)=1, D9 >1000) |
| 10 | | | AND(logical1, [logical2], [logical3], ...) |

Press **F9** to evaluate this part. It evaluates to **FALSE** because the month in cell C9 is February and not January or 1

| | C | D | F |
|----|---------|----------|--|
| 8 | DATE | SALES | JANUARY AND SALES > 1000? |
| 9 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | =AND(FALSE, D9 >1000) |
| 10 | | | AND(logical1, [logical2], [logical3], ...) |

STEP 3: Let us evaluate the second part of the formula. Select the other part: **D9 >1000**

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------|----------|--|
| 8 | DATE | SALES | JANUARY AND SALES > 1000? |
| 9 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | =AND(A151, D9 > 1000) |
| 10 | | | AND(logical1, [logical2], [logical3], ...) |

Press **F9** to evaluate this part. It evaluates to TRUE because D9 is greater than 1000.

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------|----------|--|
| 8 | DATE | SALES | JANUARY AND SALES > 1000? |
| 9 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | =AND(FALSE, TRUE) |
| 10 | | | AND(logical1, [logical2], [logical3], ...) |

Press **ESC** to exit the formula editor without making changes.

Now it makes sense why our formula here gave us a value of FALSE!

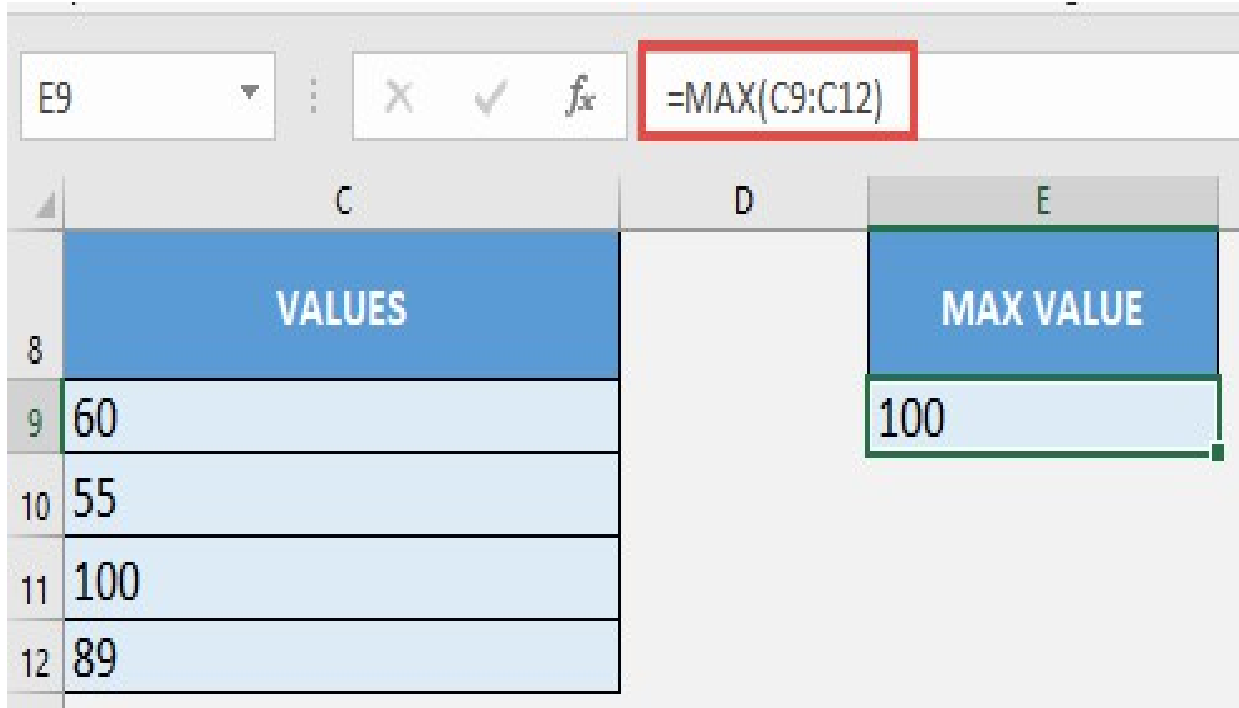
| Clipboard | | Font | | Alignment | |
|-----------|---------|----------|---------------------------|-----------|---|
| E9 | | X | ✓ | <i>fx</i> | <code>=AND(MONTH(C9)=1, D9 >1000)</code> |
| | C | D | E | F | |
| 8 | DATE | SALES | JANUARY AND SALES > 1000? | | |
| 9 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | FALSE | | |
| 10 | | | | | |

Named Ranges

What does it do?

A named range in Excel is a cell or range of cells that has a more descriptive name. It goes a long way in using named ranges, because it allows you to create cleaner and easier to understand formulas in Excel!

Our example gets the maximum value with the **MAX Function**. Let us improve this function by replacing the range of cells with a named range.



The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with the following data:

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|-----------|
| 8 | VALUES | | MAX VALUE |
| 9 | 60 | | 100 |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |

The formula bar at the top shows the formula `=MAX(C9:C12)` in cell E9, which is highlighted with a red box. The spreadsheet shows the values 60, 55, 100, and 89 in cells C9 through C12, and the result 100 in cell E9.

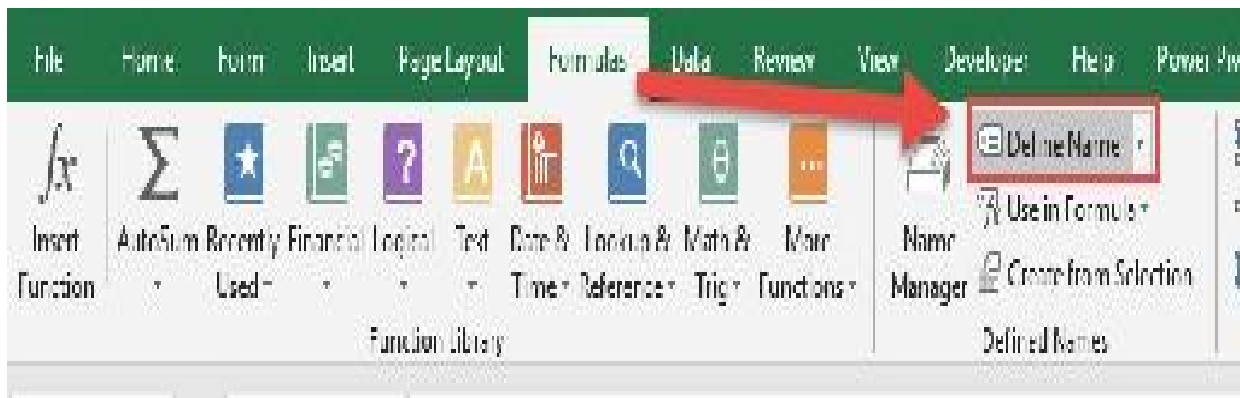
Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

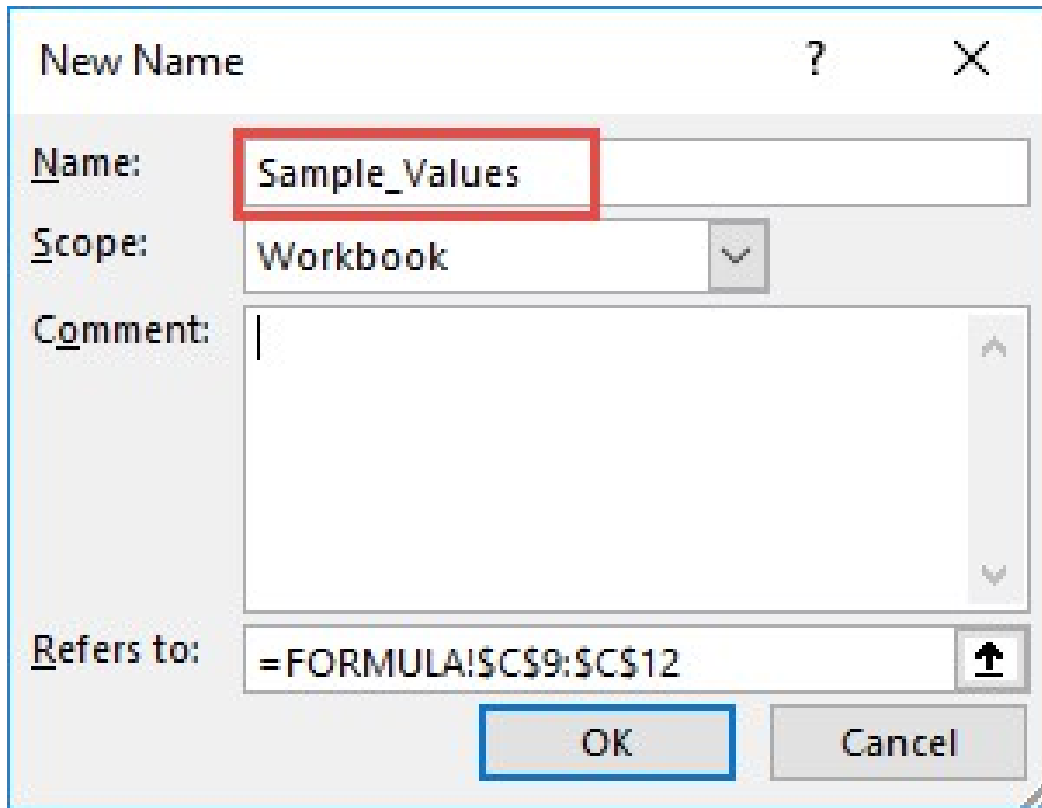
STEP 1: Select the cells that you want to give a named range to.

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|-----------|
| 8 | VALUES | | MAX VALUE |
| 9 | 60 | | 100 |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |

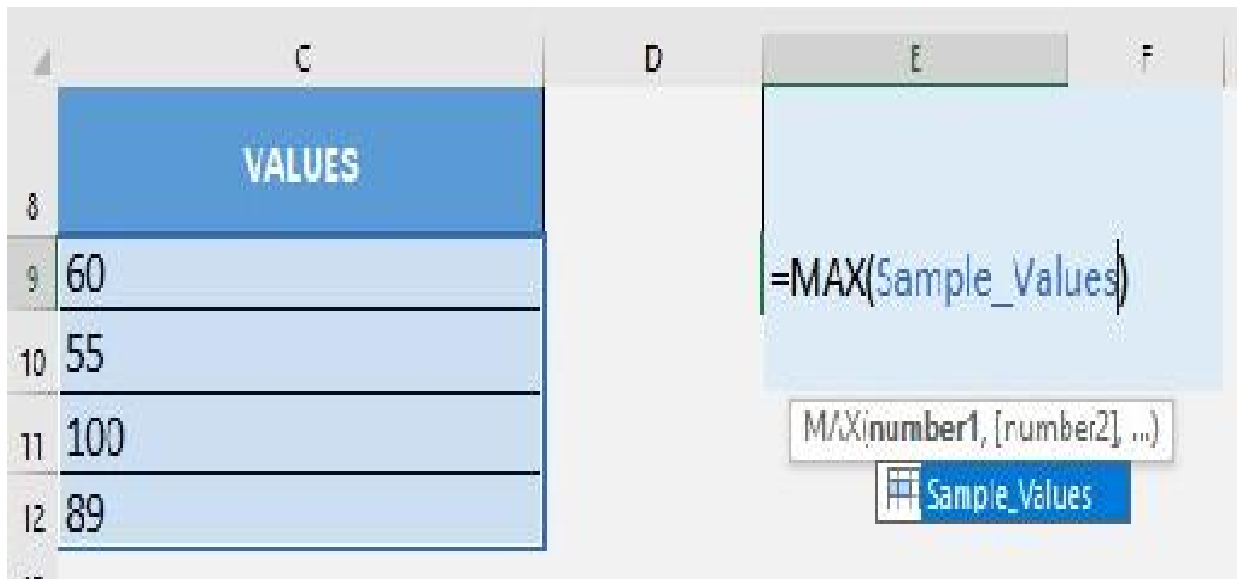
STEP 2: Go to *Formulas > Defined Names > Define Name*



STEP 3: Give it a meaningful name (it cannot have spaces) and click OK.



STEP 4: Let us now update our formula to use our named range!



Our formula looks way better now and is still working as expected!

E9 X ✓ fx =MAX(Sample_Values)

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------------|---|------------------|
| 8 | VALUES | | MAX VALUE |
| 9 | 60 | | 100 |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |

Absolute & Relative References

What does it do?

When creating formulas, it is very important to understand cell references. Let us go over the differences between absolute and relative references.

It will affect how your cell references will appear when you copy an Excel formula from one cell to another.

Exercise Workbooks:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK \(Relative Reference exercise\)](#)

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK \(Absolute Reference exercise\)](#)


Excel uses **relative references** by default. A relative reference is useful if you want to use the same pattern across different cells.

For example, we have here a formula that gets the YEAR from cell C9.

| | C | D |
|----|----------|-----------|
| 8 | DATE | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | =YEAR(C9) |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |

STEP 1: If we drag this formula all the way down for it to be copied to other cells:

| | C | D |
|----|----------|------|
| 8 | DATE | YEAR |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | 1985 |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |



Notice that the cell references have changed as well:

| | C | D |
|----|----------|------------|
| 8 | DATE | YEAR |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | 1985 |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | =YEAR(C10) |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | 1950 |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | 1990 |

| | C | D |
|----|----------|------------|
| 8 | DATE | YEAR |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | 1985 |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | 1962 |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | =YEAR(C11) |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | 1990 |

| | C | D |
|----|----------|------------|
| 8 | DATE | YEAR |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | 1985 |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | 1962 |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | =YEAR(C12) |

You could tell that Excel was smart enough to get the year of the **left cell which contains the date** without us even making a single change.

For **absolute references**, the reference to a cell is always fixed even if we copy our formula to another cell.

We have this example that uses a NETWORKDAYS function. A NETWORKDAYS Function needs a list of holidays to count the correct number of working days.

Since we want to use the NETWORKDAYS function multiple times, it would make sense to have a single list of holidays for it to use. This is where the absolute reference comes in handy.

An absolute reference contains a \$ symbol in front of the column letter and the row number. You can see in our example that it has **\$A\$9:\$A\$11** pertaining to our Holiday Table. Notice that there are relative cell references in the formula as well (e.g. **C9 and D9**).

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with the following data:

| | H | K | L | M | N | O | P | Q | R |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | | | | | | | | | |

The spreadsheet contains a table of holidays and a formula using the NETWORKDAYS function. The table is as follows:

| | H | K | L | M | N | O | P | Q | R |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 9 | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | | | | | | | | | |

The formula in cell O9 is: `=NETWORKDAYS(C9,D9,A9:A11)`

STEP 2: The magic happens when we drag our formula downwards.

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|----------|---|------------|----------|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|
| | HOLIDAYS | | START DATE | END DATE | NUMBER OF DAYS | | | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | | 1/01/18 | 1/07/18 | 4 | | | |
| 10 | 1/08/18 | | 1/01/18 | 1/14/18 | 1 | | | |
| 11 | 1/09/18 | | 1/01/18 | 1/21/18 | | | | |
| 12 | | | 1/01/18 | 1/28/18 | NETWORKDAYS(C12,D12,\$/\$9:\$/\$11) | | | |

Knowing when to use absolute or relative cell reference will be a crucial skill. It will make your work a lot easier when copying the same formula across multiple cells.

TIP: You can press the F4 key to enter an absolute reference.

Pressing the F4 key multiple times, will change the absolute/relative reference combination to a mixed reference.

Give it a try!

Evaluate Formulas Step By Step

What does it do?

This is one of the coolest tricks I have seen in Excel, as there are countless times where I had a hard time understand formulas. Especially long and complex ones!

Excel provides the way to evaluate your formula, and break it down step by step so that you can understand it!

Let us take the formulas I've created below in the **IS THE VALUE IN BETWEEN** column. We will see how this formula is resolved in a series of steps:

| START OF RANGE | END OF RANGE | VALUE TO BE EVALUATED | IS THE VALUE IN BETWEEN? | FORMULA |
|----------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 20 | 60 | 50 | Yes | =IF(C7=MEDIAN(A7:C7), "Yes", "No") |
| 10 | 40 | 50 | No | =IF(C8=MEDIAN(A8:C8), "Yes", "No") |

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

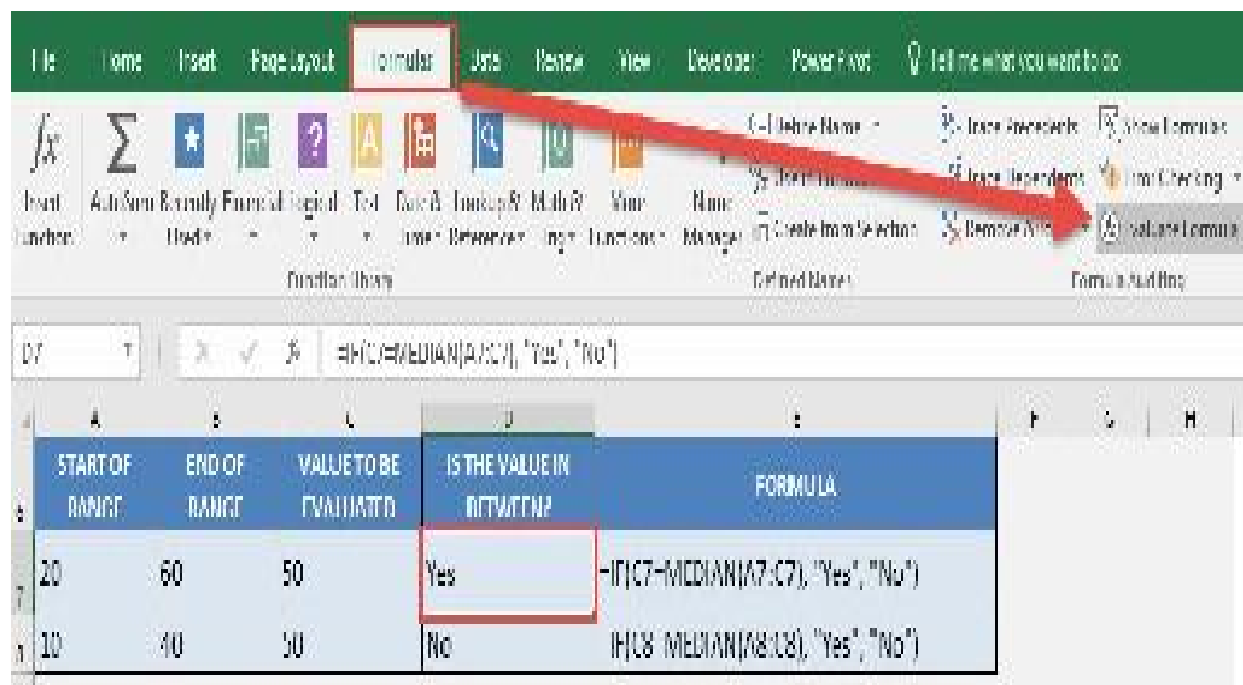
STEP 1: You can see our formula uses both the **If formula** and the **Median formula**.

The goal of this formula is to evaluate if a value (**VALUE TO BE EVALUATED**) is in between the range (**START OF RANGE to VALUE TO BE EVALUATED**)

For example: Is 50 the median of the range 20; 60; 50?

=IF(C7=MEDIAN(A7:C7), "Yes", "No")

To start understanding our formula, highlight the formula, then go to *Formulas > Evaluate Formula*:



STEP 2: Our formula is now shown on screen, and the part that is underlined is the one to be evaluated first. Click **Evaluate**.

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|----------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| | START OF RANGE | END OF RANGE | VALUE TO BE EVALUATED | IS THE VALUE IN BETWEEN? | FORMULA |
| 6 | 20 | 60 | 50 | Yes | =IF(C7=MEDIAN(A7:C7), "Yes", "No") |
| 7 | | | | | |
| 8 | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | |
| 12 | | | | | |
| 13 | | | | | |
| 14 | | | | | |
| 15 | | | | | |
| 16 | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | |
| 18 | | | | | |
| 19 | | | | | |
| 20 | | | | | |

Evaluate Formula

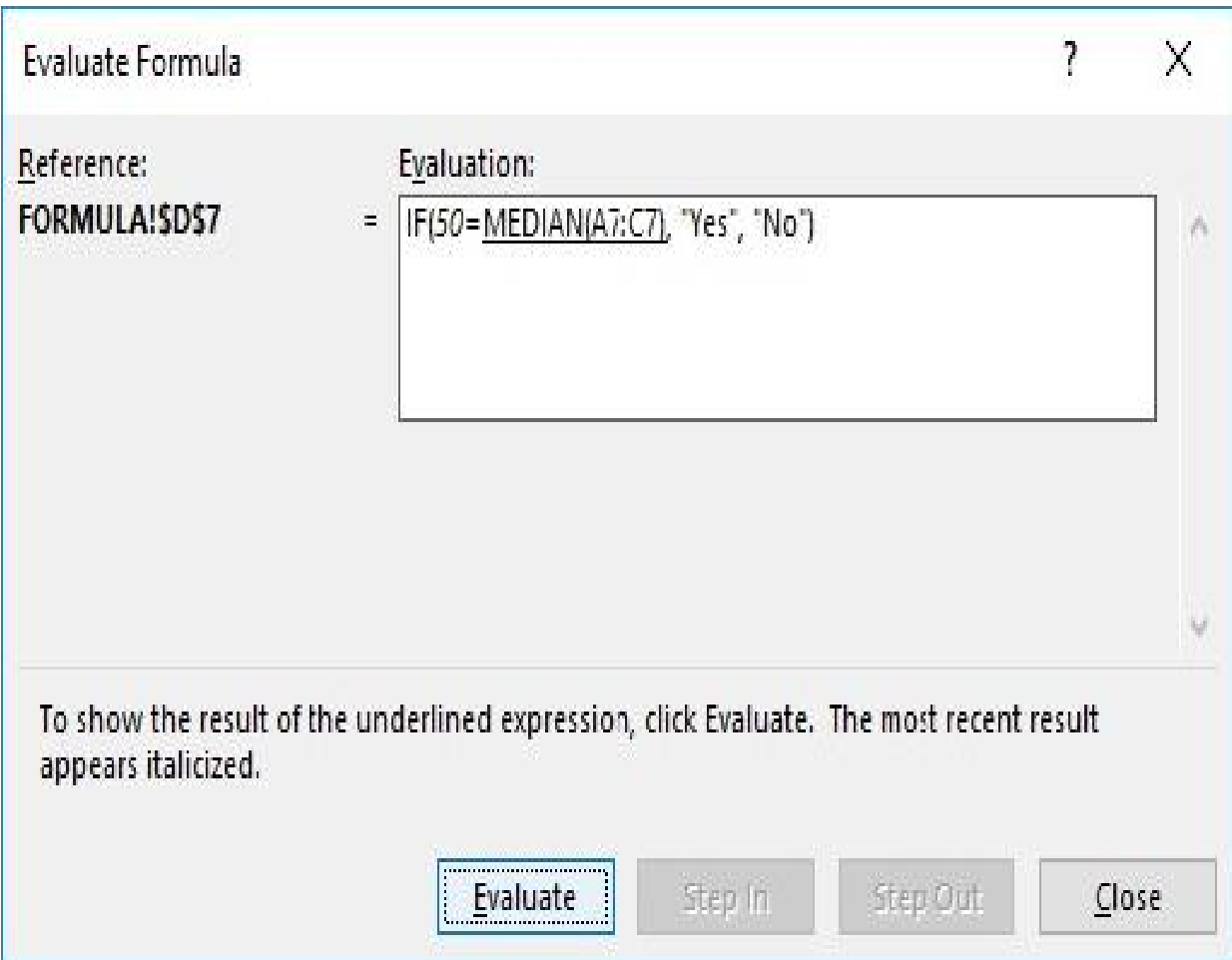
Reference: FORMULA A7:D7

Evaluation: =IF(MEDIAN(A7:C7), "Yes", "No")

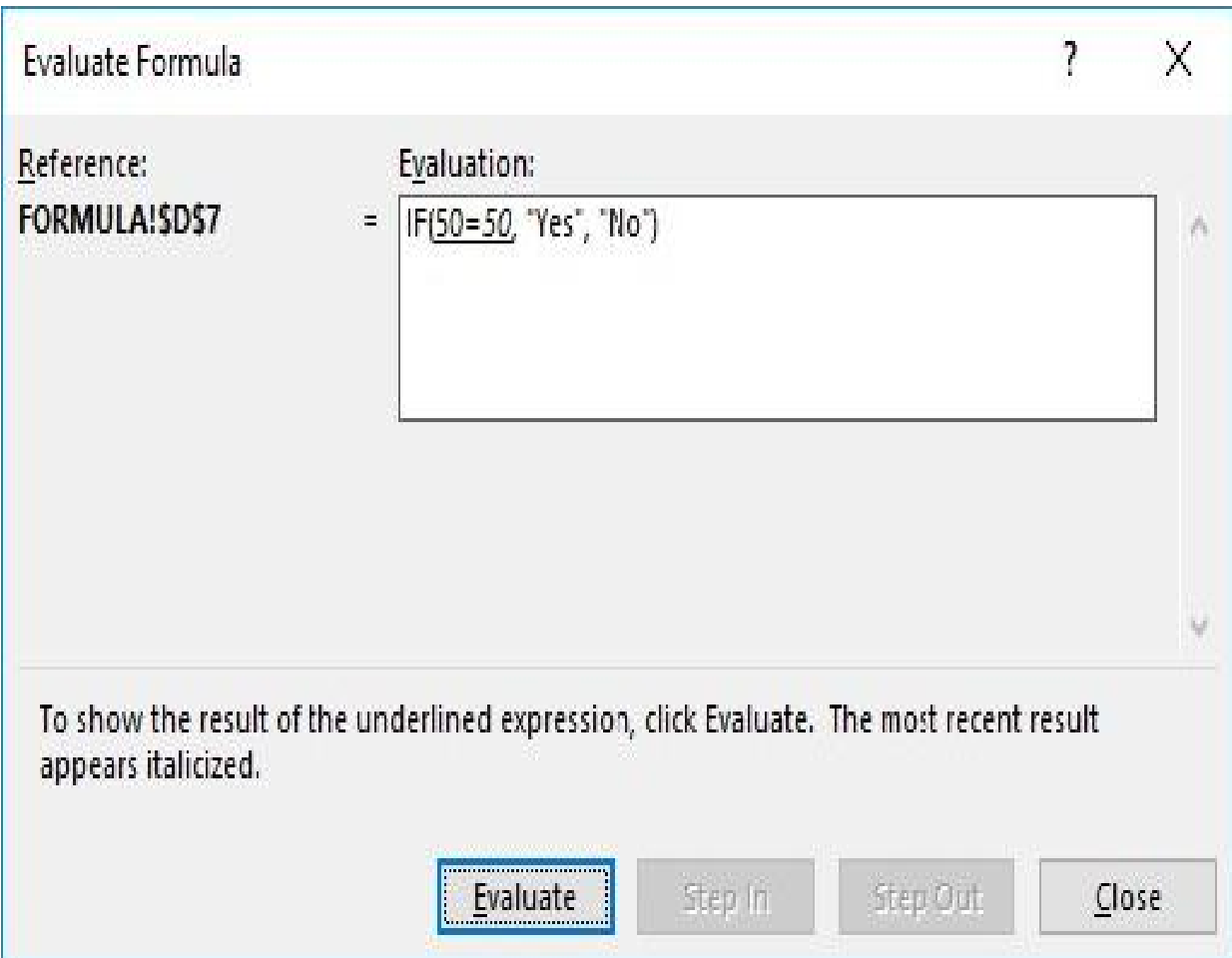
To show the result of the underlined expression, click Evaluate. The most recent result appears italicized.

Evaluate Step In Step Out Close

STEP 3: C7 has been evaluated to 50. Click **Evaluate**.

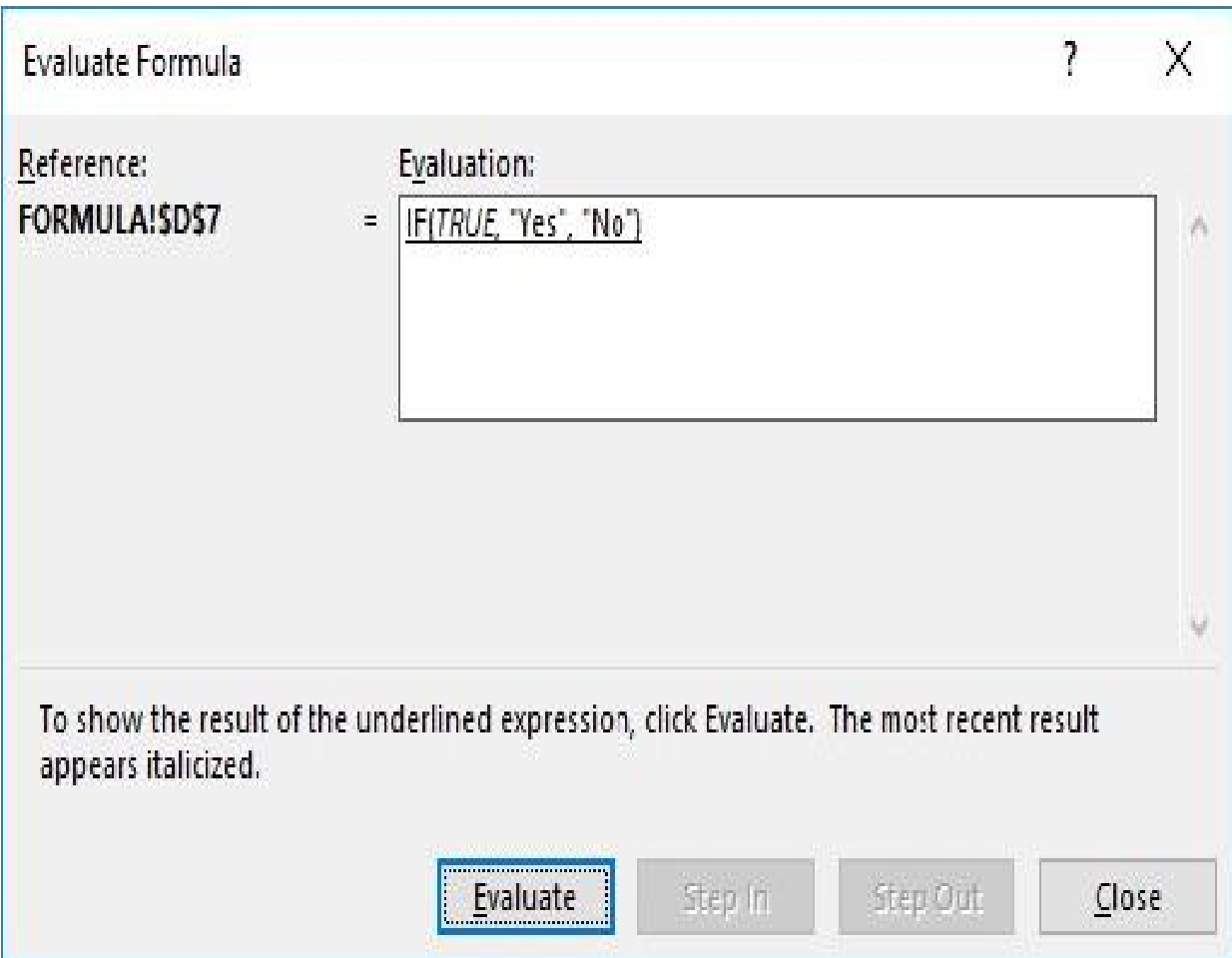


STEP 4: The median of the values from A7 to C7 (20, 60, 50) is evaluated as **50**. Click **Evaluate**.



STEP 5: Is 50 equal to 50?

Excel has evaluated it to *TRUE*. Click **Evaluate**.



STEP 6: Since the **If formula** received a *TRUE*, Excel evaluated it as a **Yes** end result. We have seen how the formula gave us the result in a few easy steps!

Evaluate Formula



Reference:

FORMULA!\$D\$7

Evaluation:

= Yes

To show the result of the underlined expression, click Evaluate. The most recent result appears italicized.

Restart

Step In

Step Out

Close

Highlight All Excel Formula Cells

What does it do?

Whenever you are auditing an Excel worksheet and need to know where all the formulas are located, a great way is to highlight the formula cells in a distinctive color.

myexcelonline.com

| | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total |
|----------------|----------|---------|---------|---------|-----------|
| Revenue | 125,687 | 658,974 | 568,745 | 658,965 | 2,012,371 |
| COGS | 185,037 | 175,849 | 148,520 | 139,549 | 648,955 |
| Marketing | 195,355 | 176,249 | 110,321 | 116,743 | 598,668 |
| Employee | 185,276 | 167,813 | 193,929 | 158,169 | 705,187 |
| Total Expenses | 565,668 | 519,911 | 452,770 | 414,461 | 1,952,810 |
| Revenue | -430,981 | 130,063 | 115,975 | 244,504 | 59,561 |

Exercise Workbook:

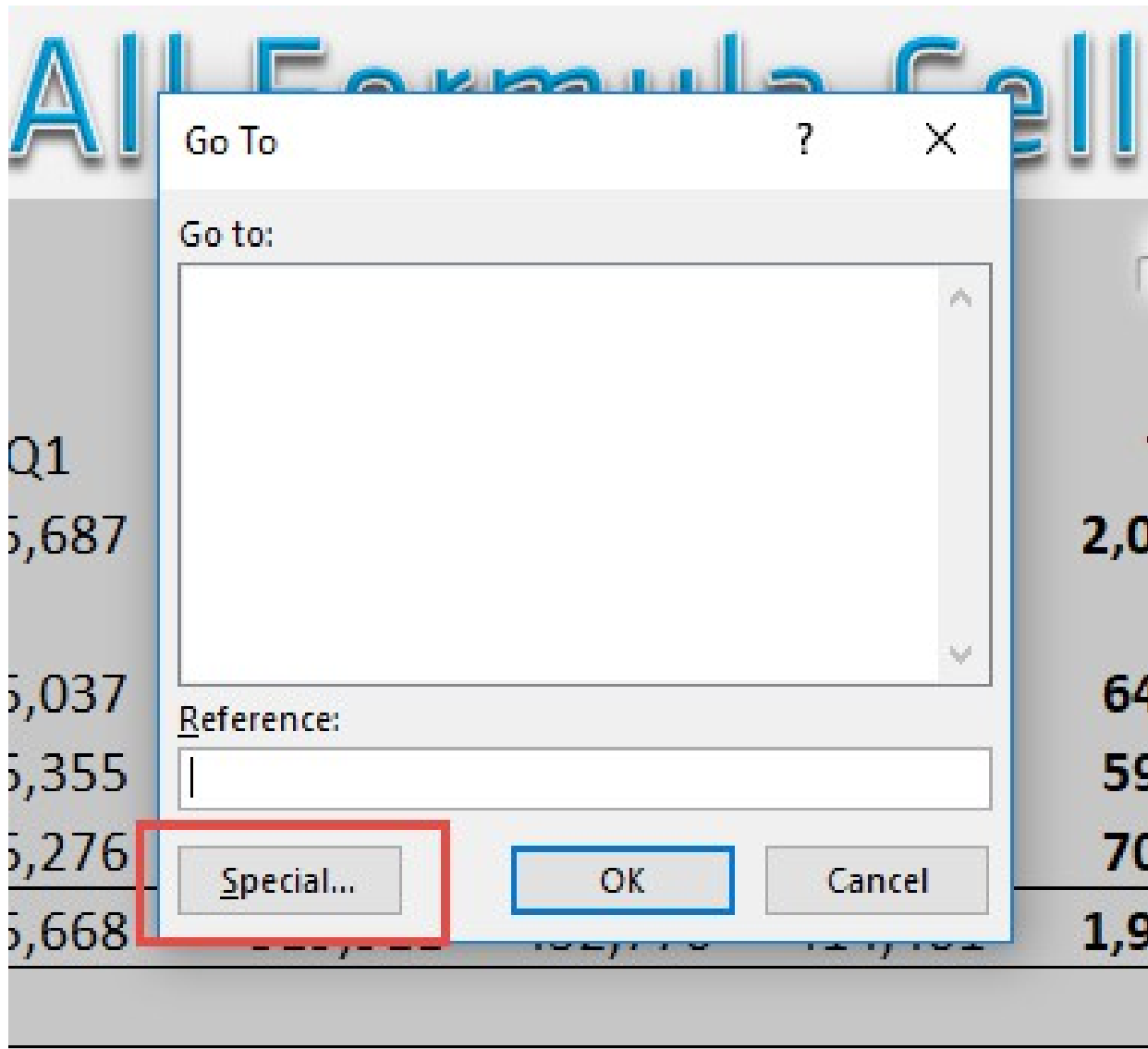
[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

STEP 1: Select all the cells in your Excel worksheet by clicking on the top left hand corner of your worksheet.

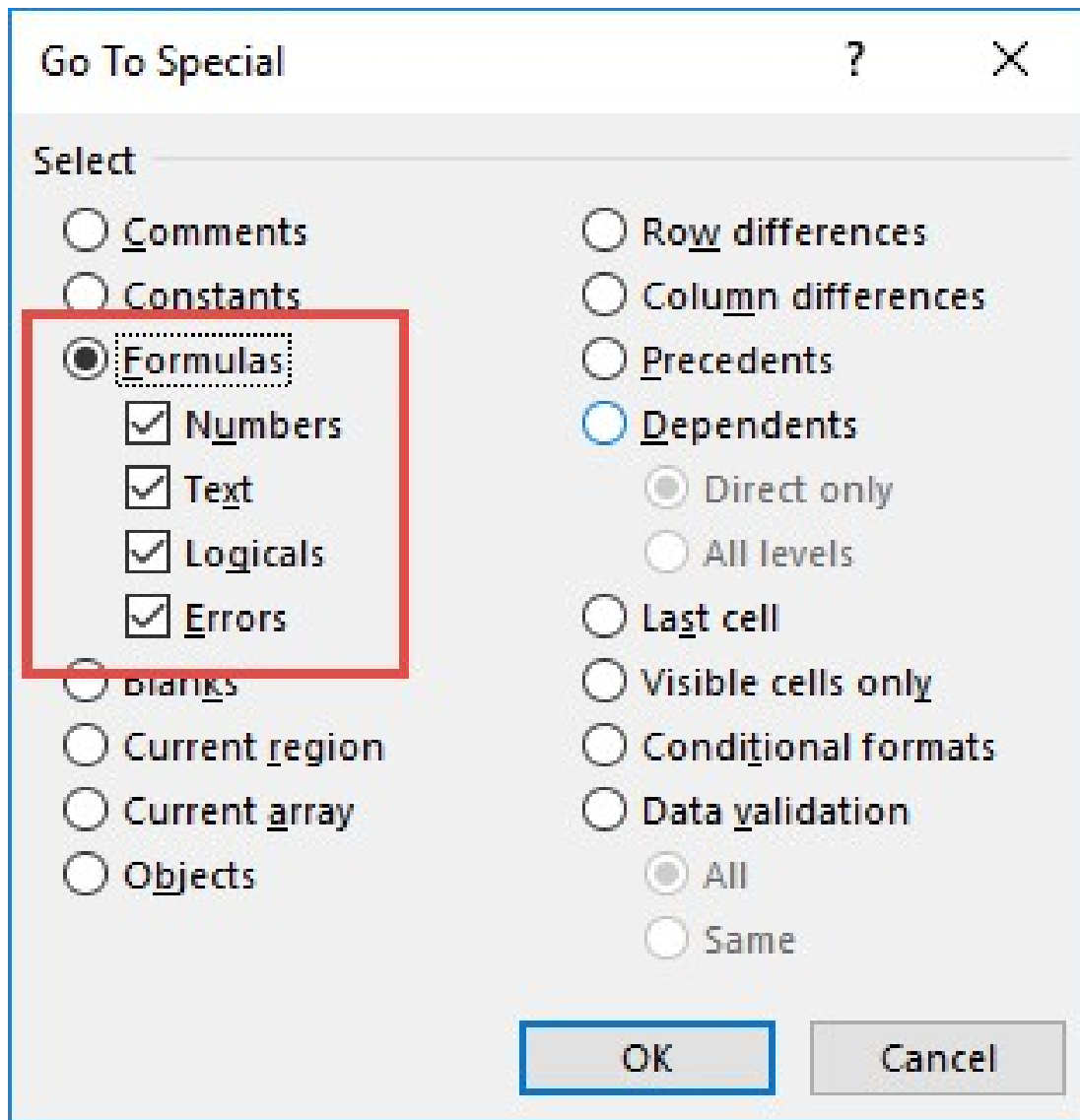
myexcelonline.com

| | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total |
|----------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|-----------|
| Revenue | 125,687 | 658,074 | 568,745 | 658,965 | 2,012,371 |
| COGS | 185,037 | 175,849 | 148,520 | 139,549 | 648,955 |
| Marketing | 195,355 | 176,749 | 110,321 | 116,743 | 598,668 |
| Employee | 185,276 | 167,813 | 193,929 | 158,169 | 705,187 |
| Total Expenses | 565,668 | 519,911 | 452,770 | 414,461 | 1,952,810 |
| Revenue | 439,981 | 139,063 | 115,975 | 244,504 | 59,561 |

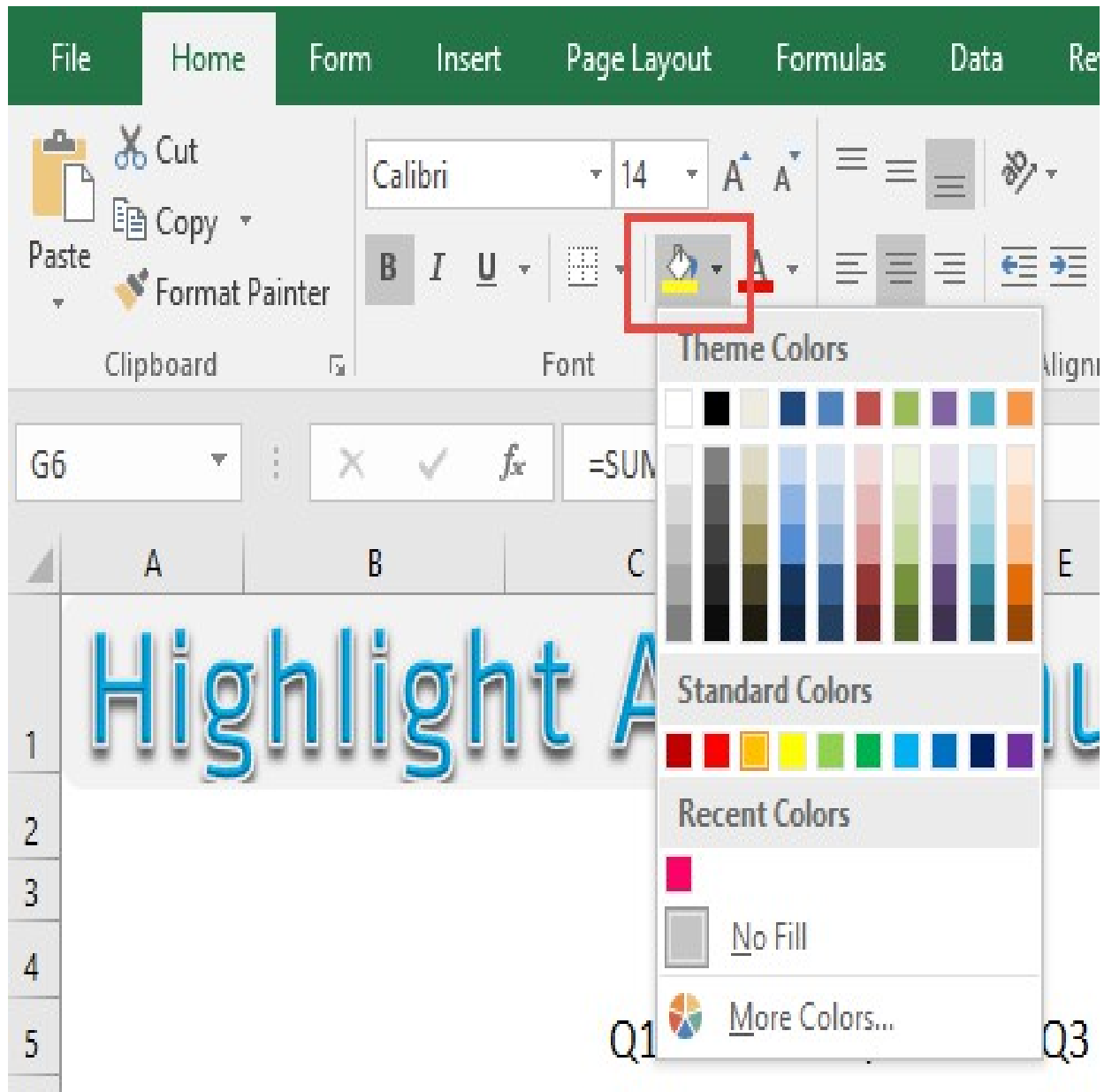
STEP 2: Press the **CTRL+G** shortcut which will open up the **Go To** dialogue box and select the **Special** button.



STEP 3: Select the *Formula* radio button and press *OK*.



STEP 4: This will highlight all the formulas in your Excel worksheet and you can use the **Fill Color** to color in the formula cells.



And now all your cells containing formulas are now highlighted!

Highlight All Formula Cells

myexcelonline.com

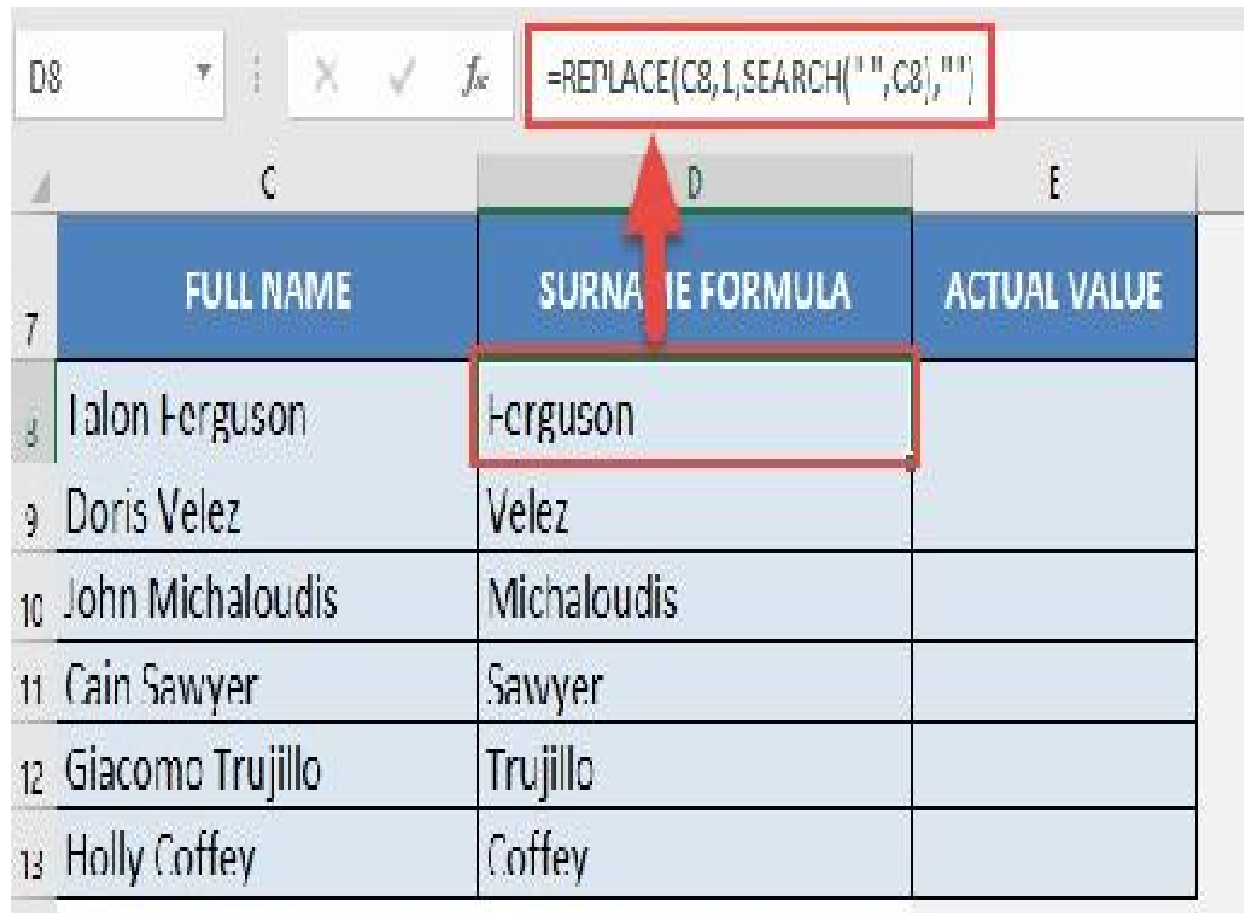
| | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total |
|----------------|----------|---------|---------|---------|-----------|
| Revenue | 125,687 | 158,974 | 168,745 | 158,905 | 2,012,371 |
| COGS | 185,037 | 175,849 | 148,520 | 139,549 | 648,955 |
| Marketing | 195,355 | 176,249 | 110,321 | 116,743 | 598,668 |
| Employee | 185,276 | 167,813 | 193,929 | 158,169 | 705,187 |
| Total Expenses | 565,668 | 519,911 | 452,770 | 414,461 | 1,952,810 |
| Revenue | -430,981 | 130,063 | 115,975 | 244,504 | 59,561 |

How to Convert Formulas to Values

What does it do?

Have you ever had a scenario where you write a formula and just want to show the value output only and get rid of the formula?

Here is an example of a formula:



The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with a formula bar at the top. The formula bar contains the formula `=REPLACE(C8,1,SEARCH("'",C8),"'')`, which is highlighted with a red box. A red arrow points from this formula bar down to cell D8. Below the formula bar is a table with three columns: 'FULL NAME', 'SURNAME', and 'ACTUAL VALUE'. The table contains the following data:

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------------|-------------|--------------|
| 7 | FULL NAME | SURNAME | ACTUAL VALUE |
| 8 | Ialou Ferguson | -erguson | |
| 9 | Doris Velez | Velez | |
| 10 | John Michaloudis | Michaloudis | |
| 11 | Cain Sawyer | Sawyer | |
| 12 | Giacomo Trujillo | Trujillo | |
| 13 | Holly Coffey | Coffey | |

Well I do not need the formula, but I do want the last names only....hard copied!

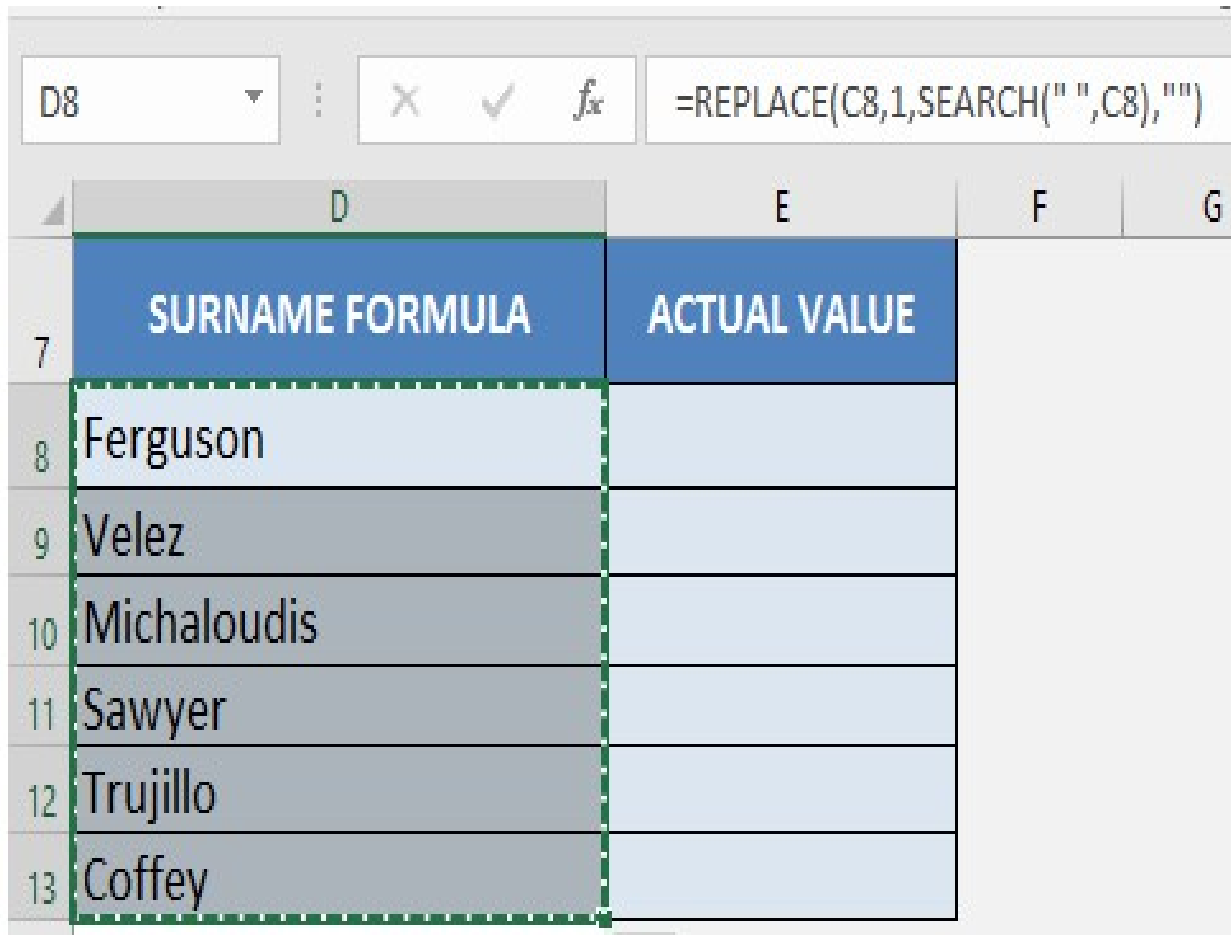
Fortunately, I have discovered two ways that you can achieve this...

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

STEP 1: Select the area that contains the formulas.

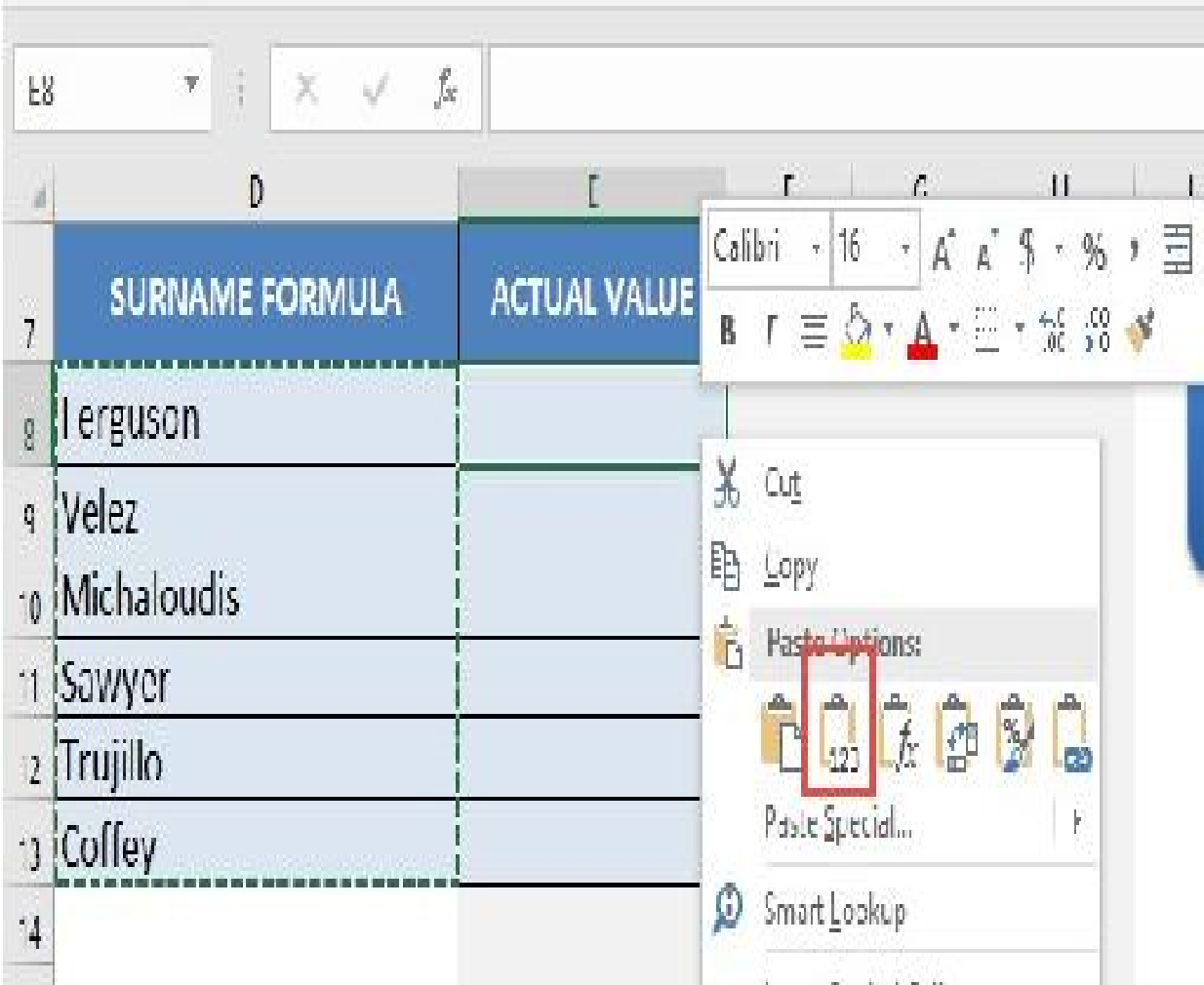
Click **CTRL+C**



The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with a formula bar at the top displaying the formula `=REPLACE(C8,1,SEARCH(" ",C8),"")`. The spreadsheet has two columns: 'SURNAME FORMULA' in column D and 'ACTUAL VALUE' in column E. The rows are numbered 7 through 13. The cells in column D contain the surnames: Ferguson, Velez, Michaloudis, Sawyer, Trujillo, and Coffey. The cells in column E are currently empty. A green dashed border highlights the range of cells from D8 to D13, indicating that this area is selected.

| | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------------------|---------------------|---|---|
| 7 | SURNAME FORMULA | ACTUAL VALUE | | |
| 8 | Ferguson | | | |
| 9 | Velez | | | |
| 10 | Michaloudis | | | |
| 11 | Sawyer | | | |
| 12 | Trujillo | | | |
| 13 | Coffey | | | |

On the column that you want to place the values on, **right-click** and select **Paste Values**:



You can see that the actual values are now stored in that column!

| | D | E |
|----|------------------------|---------------------|
| 7 | SURNAME FORMULA | ACTUAL VALUE |
| 8 | Ferguson | Ferguson |
| 9 | Velez | Velez |
| 10 | Michaloudis | Michaloudis |
| 11 | Sawyer | Sawyer |
| 12 | Trujillo | Trujillo |
| 13 | Coffey | Coffey |

STEP 2: Here's an alternative way. Select the area that contains the formulas.

Right-click and hold on the **right border**.

Drag the border, whilst holding down the right-click on your mouse, to the area you want the values to be placed in.

Select **Copy Here as Values Only**.

D8 X ✓ fx =REPLACE(C8,1,SEARCH(" ",C8),"")

| | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------------------|---------------------|---|---|
| 7 | SURNAME FORMULA | ACTUAL VALUE | | |
| 8 | Ferguson | | | |
| 9 | Velez | | | |
| 10 | Michaloudis | | | |
| 11 | Sawyer | | | |
| 12 | Trujillo | | | |
| 13 | Coffey | | | |
| 14 | | | | |
| 15 | | | | |
| 16 | | | | |
| 17 | | | | |
| 18 | | | | |
| 19 | | | | |
| 20 | | | | |
| 21 | | | | |

E8:E13

- Move Here
- Copy Here
- Copy Here as Values Only**
- Copy Here as Formats Only
- Link Here
- Create Hyperlink Here
- Shift Down and Copy
- Shift Right and Copy
- Shift Down and Move
- Shift Right and Move
- Cancel

You now have the actual values hardcoded!

E8 X ✓ fx 'Ferguson

| | D | E |
|----|-----------------|--------------|
| 7 | SURNAME FORMULA | ACTUAL VALUE |
| 8 | Ferguson | Ferguson |
| 9 | Velez | Velez |
| 10 | Michaloudis | Michaloudis |
| 11 | Sawyer | Sawyer |
| 12 | Trujillo | Trujillo |
| 13 | Coffey | Coffey |

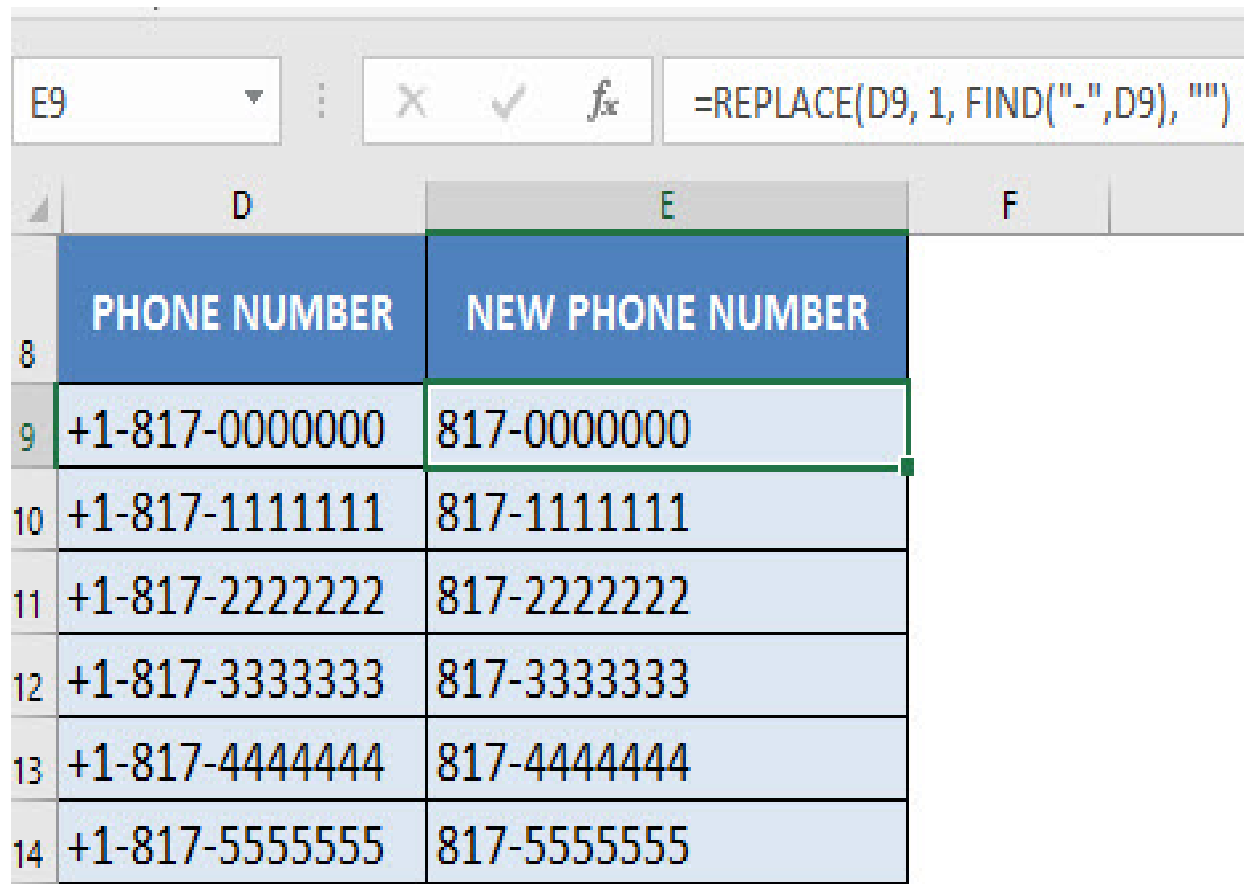
How to Show & Hide Formulas in Excel

What does it do?

When I have a sheet full of Excel formulas, sometimes I want to quickly check how each formula looks like. This is great for spreadsheet auditing.

It is very easy to do so in Excel!

Here is our sample worksheet with formulas:



The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with a formula bar at the top. The formula bar contains the formula `=REPLACE(D9, 1, FIND("-",D9), "")`. Below the formula bar, there is a table with two columns: "PHONE NUMBER" and "NEW PHONE NUMBER". The table contains six rows of data, showing the transformation of phone numbers from a full international format to a local format.

| | D | E | F |
|----|---------------------|-------------------------|---|
| 8 | PHONE NUMBER | NEW PHONE NUMBER | |
| 9 | +1-817-0000000 | 817-0000000 | |
| 10 | +1-817-1111111 | 817-1111111 | |
| 11 | +1-817-2222222 | 817-2222222 | |
| 12 | +1-817-3333333 | 817-3333333 | |
| 13 | +1-817-4444444 | 817-4444444 | |
| 14 | +1-817-5555555 | 817-5555555 | |

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

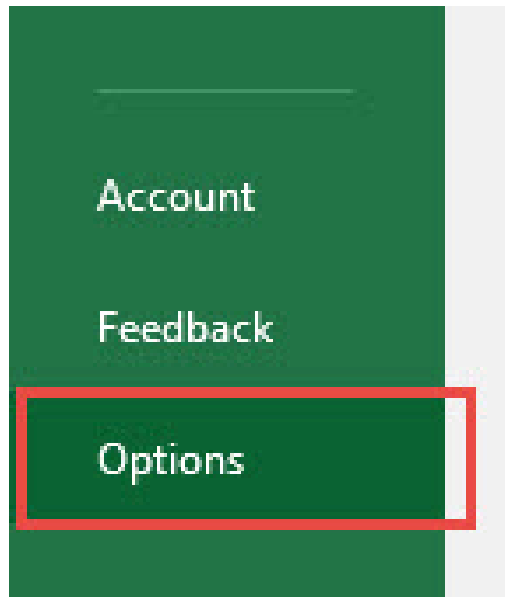
STEP 1: Press on your keyboard the following keys: **Ctrl + `**

The (`) key is usually located on the upper left part of your keyboard. This will show all your Excel formulas in your worksheet!

| | D | E |
|----|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| | PHONE NUMBER | NEW PHONE NUMBER |
| 8 | | |
| 9 | +1-817-0000000 | =REPLACE(D9, 1, FIND(" ", D9), "") |
| 10 | +1-817-1111111 | =REPLACE(D10, 1, FIND("-", D10), "") |
| 11 | +1 817 7777777 | =REPLACE(D11, 1, FIND(" ", D11), "") |
| 12 | +1-817-3333333 | =REPLACE(D12, 1, FIND(" ", D12), "") |
| 13 | +1-817-4444444 | =REPLACE(D13, 1, FIND("-", D13), "") |
| 14 | +1 817 5555555 | =REPLACE(D14, 1, FIND(" ", D14), "") |

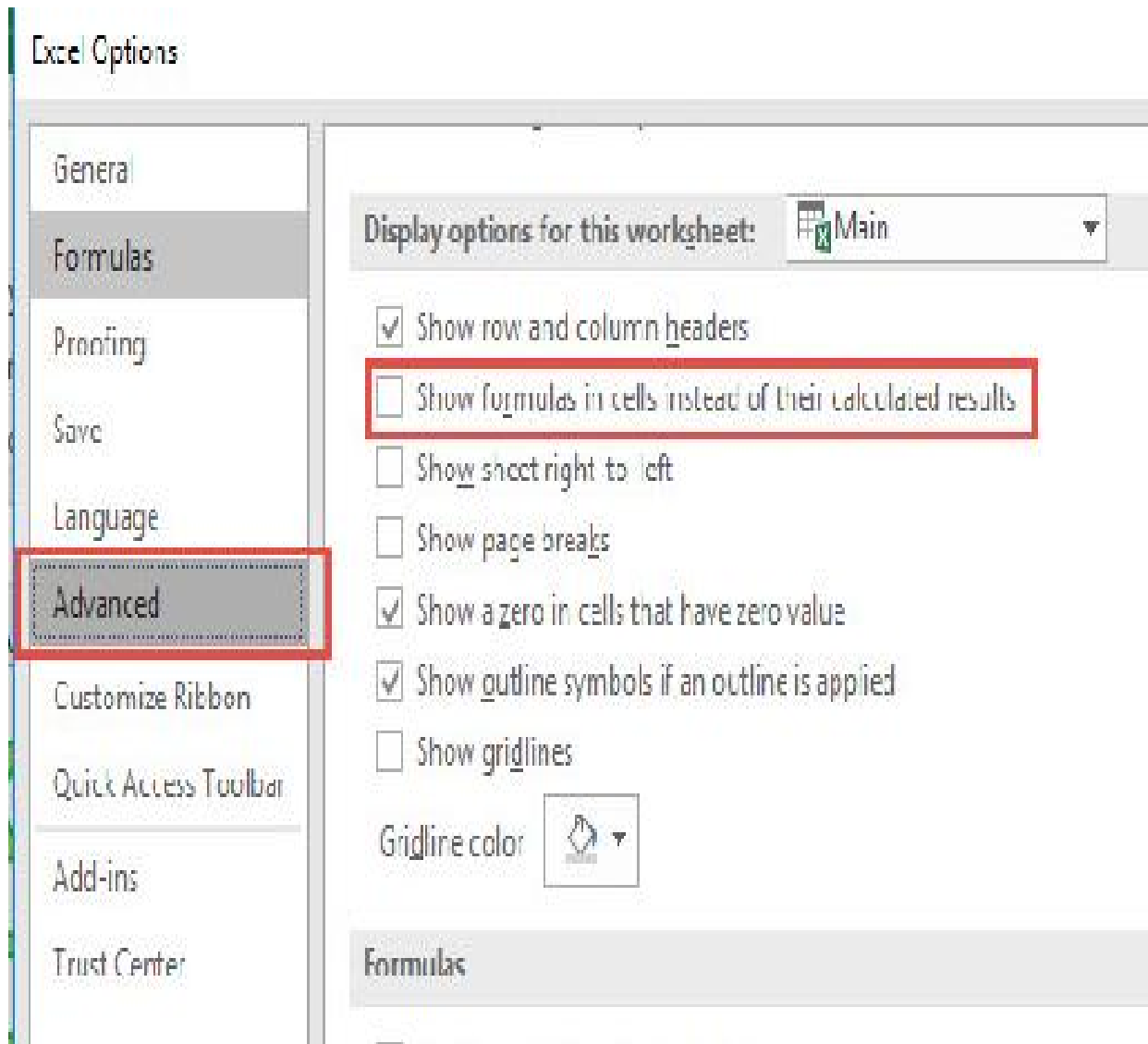
Press the **Ctrl + `** combination again to hide the formulas.

STEP 2: If you prefer to set this via Excel Options, another way is to go to **File > Options**



STEP 3: Go to **Advanced > Display Options for this Worksheet > Show formulas in cells instead of their calculated fields**

Ensure this is checked.



The formulas are all shown now too! You can uncheck it to hide the formulas again.

| PHONE NUMBER | NEW PHONE NUMBER |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| +1-817-0000000 | =REPLACE(D9, 1, FIND(" ", D9), "") |
| 11 817 1111111 | =REPLACE(D10, 1, FIND("-", D10), "") |
| +1-817-2222222 | =REPLACE(D11, 1, FIND("-", D11), "") |
| +1-817-3333333 | =REPLACE(D12, 1, FIND("-", D12), "") |
| +1-817-4444444 | =REPLACE(D13, 1, FIND("-", D13), "") |
| +1-817-5555555 | =REPLACE(D14, 1, FIND(" ", D14), "") |

Jump to a Cell Reference in a Formula

What does it do?

When writing, editing or auditing Excel formulas you will come across a scenario where you want to view and access the referenced cells within a formula argument.

This is helpful if you want to check how the formula works or to make any changes to the formula.

There is a cool tip where you can jump to the referenced cell or range within the formula and make your changes.

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

STEP 1: Double click inside your Excel formula



STEP 2: Select the formula argument that you want to edit with your mouse



STEP 3: Press F5 which will bring up the Go To dialogue box and press OK

Jumps to

1. Press t
2. Press F
3. Press C
4. You can

ed cell/ra

ila

Reference:

'STOCK LIST!D9:E23

Special... OK Cancel

Items item id supplier

=VLOOKUP(\$B13, 'STOCK LIST'!D9:E23, 2, FALSE)

STEP 4: This will take you to the referenced cell/range

| Items | Item ID | Supplier |
|---|---------|---------------------|
| Floppy Disks | 610KLO | Acme, inc. |
| Mic Stand | 125FRT | Widget Corp |
| Laptop | 689CDF | 123 Warehousing |
| Tablet | 987SDD | Demo Company |
| Pop filter | 658UYG | Smith and Co. |
| Mouse | 125RTY | Foo Bars |
| iPad | 569AER | ABC Telecom |
| VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup]) | | |
| Pen Drive | 589YUI | QWERTY Logistics |
| Mixer | 841MKL | Demo, inc. |
| Laptop Cover | 658UYH | Sample Company |
| Keyboard | 698ADR | Sample, inc |
| Hard Drives | 971UOP | Acme Corp |
| Television | 254CFG | Allied Biscuit |
| Beers | 012KIO | Ankh-Sto Associates |

STEP 5: You can **select the new range** with your mouse and also make any changes to the formula bar

fx

=VLOOKUP(\$B13,'STOCK LIST'!D9:F23|,3,FALSE)

VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup])

| Items | Item ID | Supplier |
|--------------|---------|---------------------|
| Floppy Disks | 610KLO | Acme, inc. |
| Mic Stand | 125FRT | Widget Corp |
| Laptop | 689CDF | 123 Warehousing |
| Tablet | 987SDD | Demo Company |
| Pop filter | 658UYG | Smith and Co. |
| Mouse | 125RTY | Foo Bars |
| iPad | 569AER | ABC Telecom |
| Microphone | 569ERT | Fake Brothers |
| Pen Drive | 589YUI | QWERTY Logistics |
| Mixer | 841MKL | Demo, inc. |
| Laprop Cover | 658UYH | Sample Company |
| Keyboard | 698ADR | Sample, inc |
| Hard Drives | 971UOP | Acme Corp |
| Television | 254CFG | Allied Biscuit |
| Beers | 012KIO | Ankh-Sto Associates |

STEP 6: Press **Enter** and your formula is updated

| Items | Item id | Supplier |
|------------|---|-----------------|
| Television | =VLOOKUP(\$B13,'STOCK LIST'!D9:F23,3,FALSE) | |
| Laptop | 689CDF | 123 Warehousing |
| Tablet | 987SDD | Demo Company |
| Keyboard | 698ADR | Sample, inc |
| Mouse | 125RTY | Foo Bars |
| iPad | 569ACR | ABC Telecom |
| Microphone | 569ERT | Fake Brothers |

LOOKUP FUNCTIONS

ADDRESS

What does it do?

Creates a cell reference based on the row and column numbers

Formula breakdown:

=ADDRESS(row_num, column_num, [abs_num], [a1], [sheet_text])

What it means:

=ADDRESS(row number, column number, [absolute or relative], [reference style], [name of the worksheet])

Example:

=ADDRESS(1,1,1)="\$A\$1"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Did you know that you can dynamically create cell references in Excel? Yes you can with the **ADDRESS Formula!**

The **ADDRESS Formula** takes this information to create the cell reference:

- row number
- column number
- abs_num - this is reflected if your cell reference is absolute or relative. It has 4 possibilities:
 - 1 - Absolute
 - 2 - Absolute row, Relative column
 - 3 - Relative row, Absolute column
 - 4 - Relative
- a1 - this determines if it's R1C1 or A1 style. For our examples we will not use this, and it will default to A1 Style
- 0 - R1C1 Style
- 1 - A1 Style
- sheet_text - this will add the sheet name to your cell reference if populated

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the ADDRESS function in a blank cell:**

=ADDRESS(

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|------------|---------------|--------------|----------|---|---|
| | ROW NUMBER | COLUMN NUMBER | ABSOLUTE NUM | | | |
| 9 | 1 | 1 | 1 | ADDRESS(| | |
| 10 | 1 | 1 | 2 | | | |
| 11 | 1 | 1 | 3 | | | |
| 12 | 1 | 1 | 4 | | | |
| 13 | 2 | 2 | 1 | | | |
| 14 | 10 | 5 | 1 | | | |
| 15 | | | | | | |

STEP 2: The ADDRESS arguments:

row_num

What is the row number?

Select the cell containing the row number:

=ADDRESS(C9,

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|---|---|
| | ROW NUMBER | COLUMN NUMBER | ABSOLUTE NUM | | | |
| 9 | 1 | 1 | 1 | =ADDRESS(C9, | | |
| 10 | 1 | 1 | 2 | | | |
| 11 | 1 | 1 | 3 | | | |
| 12 | 1 | 1 | 4 | | | |
| 13 | 2 | 2 | 1 | | | |
| 14 | 10 | 5 | 1 | | | |
| 15 | | | | | | |

column_num

What is the column number?

Select the cell containing the column number:

=ADDRESS(C9, D9,

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|------------|---------------|--------------|--|---|---|
| 8 | ROW NUMBER | COLUMN NUMBER | ABSOLUTE NUM | | | |
| 9 | 1 | 1 | 1 | =ADDRESS(C9, D9, | | |
| 10 | 1 | 1 | 2 | | | |
| 11 | 1 | 1 | 3 | =ADDRESS(Show many, column num, [abs num], [a1], [start], [end]) | | |
| 12 | 1 | 1 | 4 | | | |
| 13 | 2 | 2 | 1 | | | |
| 14 | 10 | 5 | 1 | | | |

abs_num

Would it be an absolute or relative cell reference?


Select the cell containing the *abs_num* input. There are 4 modes, so we have included in all of the examples so that you can see it in action.

=ADDRESS(C9, D9, E9)

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------|---------------|--------------|----------------------|---|
| 8 | ROW NUMBER | COLUMN NUMBER | ABSOLUTE NUM | | |
| 9 | 1 | 1 | 1 | =ADDRESS(C9, D9, E9) | |
| 10 | 1 | 1 | 2 | | |
| 11 | 1 | 1 | 3 | | |
| 12 | 1 | 1 | 4 | | |
| 13 | 2 | 2 | 1 | | |
| 14 | 10 | 5 | 1 | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------|---------------|--------------|--------|---|
| 8 | ROW NUMBER | COLUMN NUMBER | ABSOLUTE NUM | RESULT | |
| 9 | 1 | 1 | 1 | \$A\$1 | |
| 10 | 1 | 1 | 2 | | |
| 11 | 1 | 1 | 3 | | |
| 12 | 1 | 1 | 4 | | |
| 13 | 2 | 2 | 1 | | |
| 14 | 10 | 5 | 1 | | |
| 15 | | | | | |



You have all of your cell references generated now! Notice the differences in the 4 [abs_num] options i.e. \$A\$A, A\$1, \$A1:

| | C | D | F | F | G |
|----|------------|---------------|--------------|---------|---|
| 8 | ROW NUMBER | COLUMN NUMBER | ABSOLUTE NUM | RESULT | |
| 9 | 1 | 1 | 1 | \$A\$1 | |
| 10 | 1 | 1 | 2 | A\$1 | |
| 11 | 1 | 1 | 3 | \$A1 | |
| 12 | 1 | 1 | 4 | A1 | |
| 13 | 2 | 2 | 1 | \$B\$2 | |
| 14 | 10 | 5 | 1 | \$E\$10 | |
| 15 | | | | | |
| 16 | | | | | |

CHOOSE

What does it do?

Selects a specific value from the list of values provided

Formula breakdown:

=CHOOSE(index_num, value1, [value2], ...)

What it means:

=CHOOSE(position to take from the list, first value, [second value and so on], ...)

Example:

=CHOOSE(2, "apple", "orange", "grapes", "lemon")="orange"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Suppose you have a list, and you want to dynamically retrieve values from your list based on the position, the **CHOOSE formula** in Excel is perfect for this!

STEP 1: We need to enter the **CHOOSE** function in a blank cell:

=CHOOSE(

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------------|----------|---|
| 8 | CHOICE NUMBER | | |
| 9 | 1 | =CHOOSE(| |
| 10 | 2 | | |
| 11 | 3 | | |

CHOOSE(index_num, value1, [value2], ...)

STEP 2: The **CHOOSE** arguments:

index_num

What is the position to take from the list?

Select the cell containing the choice number. The maximum index you can put in is 254:

=CHOOSE(C9,

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------------|-------------|---|
| 8 | CHOICE NUMBER | | |
| 9 | 1 | =CHOOSE(C9, | |
| 10 | 2 | | |
| 11 | 3 | | |
| 12 | | | |

CHOOSE(index_num, value1, [value2], [value3], ...)

value1, [value2], ...

What are the values in our list?


In our example, let us type in our list that contains names of fruits:

`=CHOOSE(C9, "apple", "orange", "grapes", "lemon")`

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------------|---|---|---|
| 8 | CHOICE NUMBER | | | |
| 9 | 1 | =CHOOSE(C9, "apple", "orange", "grapes", "lemon") | | |
| 10 | 2 | | | |
| 11 | 3 | | | |


Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|---------------|--------|
| 8 | CHOICE NUMBER | RESULT |
| 9 | 1 | apple |
| 10 | 2 | |
| 11 | 3 | |



We have now chosen the first, second and third items in our list!

| | C | D |
|----|----------------------|---------------|
| 8 | CHOICE NUMBER | RESULT |
| 9 | 1 | apple |
| 10 | 2 | orange |
| 11 | 3 | grapes |
| 12 | | |



HLOOKUP

What does it do?

Searches for a value in the first row of a table array and returns a value in the same column from another row (downwards) in the table array.

Formula breakdown:

=HLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, row_index_num, [range_lookup])

What it means:

=HLOOKUP(this value, in this list, and get me value in this row, [Exact Match/FALSE/0])

Example:

=HLOOKUP("Television", A8:D10, 2, FALSE) =\$150

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Ever had a horizontal table and you want to search for values in the table easily?

I'm sure you do! There is a simple way to do this with Excel's **HLOOKUP function!**

This is very similar to the **VLOOKUP Function!** The only difference is instead of working with vertical tables, you get to do the same thing for horizontal tables!

Let's try it out on this horizontal table!

| Stock List | Television | Laptop | Tablet |
|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| Price | \$ 150.00 | \$ 185.00 | \$ 245.00 |
| Cost | \$ 85.00 | \$ 95.00 | \$ 90.00 |

Using the **HLOOKUP function** let us get the following values from this table:

- What is the **price** of a **television**?
- What is the **cost** of a **tablet**?

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: Let us target the first question: *What is the price of a television?*

We need to **enter the HLOOKUP function in a blank cell:**

=HLOOKUP(

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|---|------------|-----------|---|---|---|
| 7 | | | | | | |
| 8 | Stock List | Television | Laptop | Tablet | | |
| 9 | Price | \$ 150.00 | \$ 185.00 | \$ 245.00 | | |
| 10 | Cost | \$ 85.00 | \$ 95.00 | \$ 90.00 | | |
| 11 | | | | | | |
| 12 | <i>What is the price of a television?</i> | | | HLOOKUP(| | |
| 13 | <i>What is the cost of a tablet?</i> | | | HLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, row_index_num, [range_lookup]) | | |

STEP 2: The **HLOOKUP** arguments:

lookup_value

What is the lookup name?

We want to lookup in the "Television" column

=HLOOKUP("Television",

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|---|------------|-----------|---|---|---|
| 7 | | | | | | |
| 8 | Stock List | Television | Laptop | Tablet | | |
| 9 | Price | \$ 150.00 | \$ 185.00 | \$ 245.00 | | |
| 10 | Cost | \$ 85.00 | \$ 95.00 | \$ 90.00 | | |
| 11 | | | | | | |
| 12 | <i>What is the price of a television?</i> | | | HLOOKUP("Television", | | |
| 13 | <i>What is the cost of a tablet?</i> | | | HLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, row_index_num, [range_lookup]) | | |

table_array

What is our list?

Select the entire table!

=HLOOKUP("Television", A8:D10,

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with a table of stock prices. The table has columns for 'Stock List', 'Television', 'Laptop', and 'Tablet', and rows for 'Price' and 'Cost'. Below the table, two questions are asked in red text: 'What is the price of a television?' and 'What is the cost of a tablet?'. A formula box is shown in the background, containing the formula '=HLOOKUP("Television", A8:D10, '.

| Stock List | Television | Laptop | Tablet |
|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| Price | \$ 150.00 | \$ 185.00 | \$ 245.00 |
| Cost | \$ 85.00 | \$ 95.00 | \$ 90.00 |

2 What is the price of a television?

3 What is the cost of a tablet?

=HLOOKUP("Television", A8:D10, '.

HLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, row_index_num, [range_lookup])

row_index_num

Which row should we get our value from?

We want the price, so it's row #2 in our table!

=HLOOKUP("Television", A8:D10, 2,

| Stock List | Television | Laptop | Tablet |
|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| Price | \$ 150.00 | \$ 185.00 | \$ 245.00 |
| Cost | \$ 85.00 | \$ 95.00 | \$ 90.00 |

12 What is the price of a television?

13 What is the cost of a tablet?

=HLOOKUP("Television",A8:D10,2,)

HLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, row_index_num, [range_lookup])

- TRUE Approximate match
- FALSE Exact match

[range_lookup]

Do we want an appropriate match or exact match?

We want an exact match, so specify FALSE here.

=HLOOKUP("Television", A8:D10, 2, FALSE)

| Stock List | Television | Laptop | Tablet |
|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| Price | \$ 150.00 | \$ 185.00 | \$ 245.00 |
| Cost | \$ 85.00 | \$ 95.00 | \$ 90.00 |

12 What is the price of a television?

13 What is the cost of a tablet?

=HLOOKUP("Television",A8:D10,2,FALSE)

HLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, row_index_num, [range_lookup])

You now have your television price!

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|------------------------------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| 7 | | | | |
| 8 | Stock List | Television | Laptop | Tablet |
| 9 | Price | \$ 150.00 | \$ 185.00 | \$ 245.00 |
| 10 | Cost | \$ 85.00 | \$ 95.00 | \$ 90.00 |
| 11 | | | | |
| 12 | What is the price of a television? | | | \$ 150.00 |
| 13 | What is the cost of a tablet? | | | |

STEP 3: Now let us try doing the same for the cost of the Tablet!


The lookup name is "Tablet", and the cost is on row #3 in our table:

=HLOOKUP("Tablet", A8:D10, 3, FALSE)

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|------------------------------------|------------|-----------|--------------------------------------|---|
| 7 | | | | | |
| 8 | Stock List | Television | Laptop | Tablet | |
| 9 | Price | \$ 150.00 | \$ 185.00 | \$ 245.00 | |
| 10 | Cost | \$ 85.00 | \$ 95.00 | \$ 90.00 | |
| 11 | | | | | |
| 12 | What is the price of a television? | | | \$ 150.00 | |
| 13 | What is the cost of a tablet? | | | =HLOOKUP("Tablet", A8:D10, 3, FALSE) | |

You now have your tablet cost!

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|---|------------|-----------|-----------|
| 7 | | | | |
| 8 | Stock List | Television | Laptop | Tablet |
| 9 | Price | \$ 150.00 | \$ 185.00 | \$ 245.00 |
| 10 | Cost | \$ 85.00 | \$ 95.00 | \$ 90.00 |
| 11 | | | | |
| 12 | <i>What is the price of a television?</i> | | | \$ 150.00 |
| 13 | <i>What is the cost of a tablet?</i> | | | \$ 90.00 |



HYPERLINK

What does it do?

Creates a shortcut to a webpage, spreadsheet reference, or a file in the hard drive

Formula breakdown:

=HYPERLINK(link_location, [friendly_name])

What it means:

=HYPERLINK(link to a webpage / spreadsheet reference / hard drive file, [display name])

Example:

=HYPERLINK("https://myexcelonline.com", "MyExcelOnline")
[MyExcelOnline](https://myexcelonline.com)

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Imagine you can create links in your Excel spreadsheet that either links to: **website urls, other parts in your workbook, or even to a file in your hard drive.**

The **HYPERLINK Formula** in Excel lets you dynamically create these!

STEP 1: We need to **enter the *HYPERLINK* function in a blank cell:**

=HYPERLINK(

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------------------------|----------------|---|---|
| 8 | LINK LOCATION | | NAME | |
| 9 | https://myexcelonline.com | MyExcelOnline | =HYPERLINK(| |
| 10 | #SHEET1!A1 | Jump to Sheet1 | | |
| 11 | C:\Windows\Temp\test.txt | Open Text File | HYPERLINK(link_location, [friendly_name]) | |
| 12 | | | | |

STEP 2: The **HYPERLINK** arguments:

link_location

What is the exact link location?

Select the cell containing the link location:

=HYPERLINK(C9,

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------------------------|----------------|---|---|
| 8 | LINK LOCATION | | NAME | |
| 9 | https://myexcelonline.com | MyExcelOnline | =HYPERLINK(C9, | |
| 10 | #SHEET1!A1 | Jump to Sheet1 | | |
| 11 | C:\Windows\Temp\test.txt | Open Text File | HYPERLINK(link_location, [friendly_name]) | |
| 12 | | | | |

friendly_name

What will be the display name of the link?

Select the cell containing the display name. This gives your link a more presentable name:

=HYPERLINK(C9, D9)

| | C | D | E |
|----|---|----------------|--------------------|
| 8 | LINK LOCATION | NAME | |
| 9 | https://myexcelonline.com | MyExcelOnline | =HYPERLINK(C9, D9) |
| 10 | #SHEET1!A1 | Jump to Sheet1 | |
| 11 | C:\Windows\Temp\test.txt | Open Text File | |
| 12 | | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | E |
|----|---|----------------|---|
| 8 | LINK LOCATION | NAME | HYPERLINK |
| 9 | https://myexcelonline.com | MyExcelOnline | MyExcelOnline |
| 10 | #SHEET1!A1 | Jump to Sheet1 | |
| 11 | C:\Windows\Temp\test.txt | Open Text File | |

You now have your **hyperlinks** all ready to go!

| | E | D | F |
|----|---|----------------|---|
| 8 | LINK LOCATION | NAME | HYPERLINK |
| 9 | https://myexcelonline.com | MyExcelOnline | MyExcelOnline |
| 10 | #SHEET1/A1 | Jump to Sheet1 | Jump to Sheet1 |
| 11 | C:\Windows\Temp\test.txt | Open Text File | Open Text File |
| 12 | | | |



INDEX

What does it do?

It returns a cell's value from within a table/range

Formula breakdown:

=INDEX(array, row_num, [column_num])

What it means:

=INDEX(from this table/range, return me this row number, [and return me this column number])

Example:

=INDEX(C16:E19,2,2)=\$652 i.e. Price of Laptop In Table

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The **INDEX** function in Excel returns a cell's values from within a table/array.

It works like a map, so you have to select a range (table/array) and tell it to return you the coordinates (Row & Column numbers).

So if you want to return values from a Price List or large data set, then your **INDEX** function is your savior.

We want to get the **price of a laptop in 2014 and 2015** based on price table.

STEP 1: We need to enter the **INDEX** function in a blank cell:

=INDEX(

Example: What is the PRICE for a LAPTOP in 2014 and 2015?

| column_num | column_num | column_num |
|------------|------------|------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 |
| Prices | 2014 | 2015 |
| television | \$186 | \$401 |
| Laptop | \$672 | \$671 |
| Tablet | \$271 | \$561 |
| Keyboard | \$54 | \$32 |

| Item | 2014 Price | 2015 Price |
|--------|------------|------------|
| Laptop | =INDEX | |

INDEX(array, row_num, [column_num])
INDEX(reference, row_num, [column_num], [area_num])

STEP 2: The **INDEX** arguments for the 2014 laptop price:

array

What is the table we are searching in?

We need to select the pricing table here.

=INDEX(C16:E19,

| | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K |
|----|---|---------------|-------------|-------------|---|------|------------|------------|---|
| 12 | | column_num | column_num | column_num | | | | | |
| 13 | | 1 | 2 | 3 | | | | | |
| 15 | | Prices | 2014 | 2015 | | | | | |
| 16 | 1 | Television | \$786 | \$541 | | Item | 2014 Price | 2015 Price | |
| 17 | 2 | Laptop | \$652 | \$631 | | | | | |
| 18 | 3 | Tablet | \$774 | \$664 | | | | | |
| 19 | 4 | Keyboard | \$54 | \$32 | | | | | |
| 20 | | | | | | | | | |

array

-INDEX(C16:E19,
 INDEX(array,row_num,(column_num))
 INDEX(reference,row_num,(column_num),(area_num))

row_num

What row number contains the data?

Since we want the laptop, it's on row #2

=INDEX(C16:E19, 2,

| | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K |
|----|---|---------------|-------------|-------------|---|------|------------|------------|---|
| 12 | | column_num | column_num | column_num | | | | | |
| 13 | | 1 | 2 | 3 | | | | | |
| 15 | | Prices | 2014 | 2015 | | | | | |
| 16 | 1 | Television | \$786 | \$541 | | Item | 2014 Price | 2015 Price | |
| 17 | 2 | Laptop | \$652 | \$631 | | | | | |
| 18 | 3 | Tablet | \$774 | \$664 | | | | | |
| 19 | 4 | Keyboard | \$54 | \$32 | | | | | |
| 20 | | | | | | | | | |

array

-INDEX(C16:E19,2,
 INDEX(array,row_num,(column_num))
 INDEX(reference,row_num,(column_num),(area_num))

column_num

What column number contains the data?

Since we want the price for the year 2014, it's on column #2

=INDEX(C16:E19, 2, 2)

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K |
|----|---|---|---------------|-------------|-------------|---|---|---|----------------------------|------------|------------|
| 12 | | | column_num | column_num | column_num | | | | | | |
| 13 | | | 1 | 2 | 3 | | | | | | |
| 14 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | Prices | 2014 | 2015 | | | | | | |
| 16 | | | Television | \$786 | \$541 | | | | Item | 2014 Price | 2015 Price |
| 17 | | | Laptop | \$652 | \$631 | | | | <u>=INDEX(C16:E19,2,2)</u> | | |
| 18 | | | Tablet | \$274 | \$564 | | | | | | |
| 19 | | | Keyboard | \$54 | \$32 | | | | | | |
| 20 | | | | | | | | | | | |

STEP 3: The **INDEX** arguments for the 2015 laptop price:

array

What is the table we are searching in?

We need to select the pricing table here.

=INDEX(C16:E19,

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K | L | M |
|----|---|---|---------------|-------------|-------------|---|---|---|--------|------------------------|------------|---|---|
| 12 | | | column_num | column_num | column_num | | | | | | | | |
| 13 | | | 1 | 2 | 3 | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | Prices | 2014 | 2015 | | | | | | | | |
| 16 | | | Television | \$786 | \$541 | | | | Item | 2014 Price | 2015 Price | | |
| 17 | | | Laptop | \$652 | \$631 | | | | Laptop | <u>=INDEX(C16:E19,</u> | | | |
| 18 | | | Tablet | \$274 | \$564 | | | | | | | | |
| 19 | | | Keyboard | \$54 | \$32 | | | | | | | | |
| 20 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

row_num

What row number contains the data?

Since we want the laptop, it's on row #2

=INDEX(C16:E19, 2,

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with the following data:

| column_num | column_num | column_num |
|------------|------------|------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 |
| Prices | 2014 | 2015 |
| Television | \$786 | \$541 |
| Laptop | \$652 | \$631 |
| Tablet | \$274 | \$564 |
| Keyboard | \$54 | \$32 |

Next to it is a table with the following data:

| Item | 2014 Price | 2015 Price |
|--------|--------------------|------------|
| Laptop | =INDEX(C16:E19, 2, | |

A tooltip for the INDEX function is visible, showing the syntax: `INDEX(array, row_num, [column_num], [area_num])`.

column_num

What column number contains the data?

Since we want the price for the year 2015, it's on column #3

=INDEX(C16:E19, 2, 3)

The screenshot shows the same Excel spreadsheet as above, but with the formula in the second table updated to `=INDEX(C16:E19, 2, 3)`. The tooltip is no longer visible.

You now have your prices!

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K |
|----|---|---|---------------|-------------|-------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12 | | | column_num | column_num | column_num | | | | | | |
| 13 | | | 1 | 2 | 3 | | | | | | |
| 14 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | Prices | 2014 | 2015 | | | | | | |
| 16 | | | Television | \$786 | \$641 | | | | | | |
| 17 | | | Laptop | \$652 | \$631 | | | | | | |
| 18 | | | Tablet | \$274 | \$564 | | | | | | |
| 19 | | | Keyboard | \$54 | \$32 | | | | | | |
| 20 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 21 | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Item | 2014 Price | 2015 Price |
|--------|------------|------------|
| Laptop | \$652 | \$631 |
| | | |

array

INDEX-MATCH

What does it do?

Searches the row position of a value/text in one column (using the **MATCH** function) and returns the value/text in the same row position from another column to the left or right (using the **INDEX** function)

Formula breakdown:

=INDEX(array, MATCH(lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type])

What it means:

=INDEX(return the value/text from this range, MATCH(from the row position of this value/text))

Example:

=INDEX(B13:B17,MATCH("Tablet",C13:C17,0)) = TAB698

i.e. Stock Id of a Tablet

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The VLOOKUP formula searches for a value in the first column of an array and returns a value to the right of that array.

How about if you wanted to return a value to the left hand side of that array?

Well, this is where the **INDEX-MATCH** formula comes in and gives you a helping hand!

It searches the row position of a value/text in one column (using the **MATCH** function) and returns the value/text in the same row position from another column to the left or right (using the **INDEX** function).

We want to get the **stock id of the tablet**, and we will use a combination of **INDEX** and **MATCH** to get this!

STEP 1: We need to enter the **INDEX** function in a blank cell:

=INDEX(

Example:

What is the **STOCK ID** for the **TABLET**?

| STOCK ID | STOCK ITEM | PRICE | COST |
|----------|------------|---------|-------|
| TEL158 | Television | \$8,950 | \$881 |
| LAP1987 | Laptop | \$7,840 | \$976 |
| TAB198 | Tablet | \$7,500 | \$689 |
| MON032 | Monitor | \$6,090 | \$588 |
| DR0344 | Drone | \$5,802 | \$555 |

| STOCK ITEM | STOCK ID |
|------------|----------|
| Tablet | =INDEX() |

INDEX(array, row_num, [column_num])
INDEX(reference, row_num, [column_num], [area_num])

STEP 2: The **INDEX** arguments:

array

Where is the list that contains the stock id that we want to return?

=INDEX(B13:B17,

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|---|-----------------|-------------------|--------------|-------------|---|-------------------|-----------------|
| 11 | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | | STOCK ID | STOCK ITEM | PRICE | COST | | | |
| 13 | | TEL158 | Television | \$8,950 | \$881 | | STOCK ITEM | STOCK ID |
| 14 | | LAP1987 | Laptop | \$7,840 | \$976 | | Tablet | =INDEX(B13:B17, |
| 15 | | TAB008 | Tablet | \$7,507 | \$680 | | | |
| 16 | | MON032 | Monitor | \$6,690 | \$588 | | | |
| 17 | | DR01844 | Drone | \$5,802 | \$555 | | | |

row_num

What row number contains the data?

Let us use the Match function to get the row number of the stock item.

=INDEX(B13:B17, MATCH(

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|---|-----------------|-------------------|--------------|-------------|---|-------------------|------------------------|
| 11 | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | | STOCK ID | STOCK ITEM | PRICE | COST | | | |
| 13 | | TEL158 | Television | \$8,950 | \$881 | | STOCK ITEM | STOCK ID |
| 14 | | LAP1987 | Laptop | \$7,840 | \$976 | | Tablet | =INDEX(B13:B17, MATCH(|
| 15 | | TAB008 | Tablet | \$7,507 | \$680 | | | |
| 16 | | MON032 | Monitor | \$6,690 | \$588 | | | |
| 17 | | DR01844 | Drone | \$5,802 | \$555 | | | |

STEP 3: The **MATCH** arguments:

lookup_value

What is the value that we want to match?

We want to match the Tablet.

=INDEX(B13:B17, MATCH(G14,

| STOCK ID | STOCK ITEM | PRICE | COST |
|----------|------------|---------|-------|
| TI1458 | Television | \$8,959 | \$884 |
| LAP5987 | Laptop | \$7,840 | \$976 |
| TAB608 | Tablet | \$7,507 | \$691 |
| MON632 | Monitor | \$6,000 | \$568 |
| THR1894 | Throne | \$5,807 | \$555 |

| STOCK ITEM | STOCK ID |
|------------|----------------------------------|
| | =INDEX(B13:B17, MATCH(G14, ...)) |

MATCH: (lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type])

lookup_array

Where is the list that contains the stock items?

=INDEX(B13:B17, MATCH(G14, C13:C17,

| STOCK ID | STOCK ITEM | PRICE | COST |
|----------|------------|---------|-------|
| TI1458 | Television | \$8,959 | \$884 |
| LAP5987 | Laptop | \$7,840 | \$976 |
| TAB608 | Tablet | \$7,507 | \$690 |
| MON632 | Monitor | \$6,000 | \$568 |
| THR1894 | Throne | \$5,807 | \$555 |

| STOCK ITEM | STOCK ID |
|------------|-------------------------------------|
| | =INDEX(B13:B17, MATCH(G14, C13:C17, |

MATCH: (lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type])

- 1 - Exact match
- 0 - Exact match
- 1 - Greater than

match_type

What kind of matching do you want?

Let's put in 0 to get the exact match

=INDEX(B13:B17, MATCH(G14, C13:C17, 0))

| STOCK ID | STOCK ITEM | PRICE | COST | STOCK ITEM | STOCK ID |
|----------|------------|---------|-------|--|----------|
| TEL158 | Television | \$8,959 | \$884 | | |
| LAP5987 | Laptop | \$7,840 | \$976 | INDEX(D13:D17, MATCH(G14, C13:C17, 0)) | |
| TAD698 | Tablet | \$7,507 | \$689 | | |
| MON612 | Monitor | \$6,690 | \$588 | | |
| DRD844 | Drone | \$5,802 | \$555 | | |

With this, the **MATCH** function will get the row number containing the Tablet, which is row #3. Then with Row #3, we will get the stock id in that same row using the **INDEX** function.

| STOCK ID | STOCK ITEM | PRICE | COST | STOCK ITEM | STOCK ID |
|----------|------------|---------|-------|------------|----------|
| TEL158 | Television | \$8,959 | \$884 | | |
| LAP5987 | Laptop | \$7,840 | \$976 | Tablet | TAD698 |
| TAD698 | Tablet | \$7,507 | \$689 | | |
| MON612 | Monitor | \$6,690 | \$588 | | |
| DRD844 | Drone | \$5,802 | \$555 | | |

INDIRECT

What does it do?

Returns a reference to a range. The referenced range can be a cell, a range of cells, or a named range.

Formula breakdown:

=INDIRECT(ref_text, [a1])

What it means:

=INDIRECT(Return the contents in this cell, Omit if the reference is an A1 style or enter FALSE if it is a R1C1 style)

Example:

=INDIRECT("D10") =Contents of Cell D10

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The INDIRECT function mystifies lots of Excel users and one that does not get that much fan fare, but I am about to change that for you!

To be totally honest, I wasn't a big user of the INDIRECT function, but after seeing the various ways that it can be applied in to an Excel workbook, Financial Model or Excel Dashboard, I was hooked!

REFERENCED RANGE IS A CELL

=INDIRECT(G9)

When the referenced range is a cell, the INDIRECT function will go and return the content of the referenced cell.

Say we enter in cell **G9** the following A1 style: **D10**

In another cell we enter **=INDIRECT(G9)**

This will indirectly return the value that resides in cell D10, which is the number **32** in our example below:

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|---|---|----|----|----|---|--------|---|
| 8 | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | 38 | 25 | 43 | | A Cell | |
| 10 | | | 85 | 32 | 27 | | D10 | |
| 11 | | | 42 | 32 | 24 | | 32 | |
| 12 | | | 79 | 99 | 8 | | | |
| 13 | | | 6 | 32 | 13 | | | |
| 14 | | | 91 | 70 | 16 | | | |
| 15 | | | 48 | 18 | 13 | | | |
| 16 | | | 61 | 88 | 17 | | | |
| 17 | | | | | | | | |

REFERENCE A RANGE OF CELLS

`=SUM(INDIRECT(C9:E9))`

When the referenced range is a range of cells, the INDIRECT function will go and return the content of the referenced cells.

We can then enter a SUM function which will total the referenced cells.

Say we enter in cell I9 the following A1 style: **C9:E9**

In another cell we enter `=INDIRECT(I9)`

This will indirectly Sum the values that reside in cells C9:E9, which is **106** in the example below:

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with the following data table:

| | | | |
|----|----|----|----|
| 8 | | | |
| 9 | 38 | 25 | 43 |
| 10 | 85 | 32 | 27 |
| 11 | 42 | 32 | 24 |
| 12 | 79 | 99 | 8 |
| 13 | 6 | 32 | 13 |
| 14 | 91 | 70 | 16 |
| 15 | 48 | 18 | 13 |
| 16 | 61 | 88 | 17 |
| 17 | | | |

The formula bar shows the formula: `=SUM(INDIRECT(I9))`. The result of the formula, **106**, is displayed in cell I11. A red box highlights the range C9:E9, and a green box highlights the result 106. The text "Range of cells" is written in red above the C9:E9 range.

REFERENCE IS A NAMED RANGE

`=SUM(INDIRECT(NamedRange))`

When the referenced range is Named Range, the INDIRECT function will go and return the content of the Named Range.

We can then enter a SUM function which will total the Named Range.

We need to create a **Named Range** by selecting the data range and entering a name (with no spaces) in the Name Box: **TABLE**

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with a named range 'TABLE' defined in cell K9. The range contains the following data:

| | C | D | E |
|----|----|----|----|
| 9 | 38 | 25 | 43 |
| 10 | 85 | 32 | 27 |
| 11 | 42 | 32 | 24 |
| 12 | 79 | 99 | 8 |
| 13 | 6 | 32 | 13 |
| 14 | 91 | 70 | 16 |
| 15 | 48 | 18 | 13 |
| 16 | 61 | 88 | 17 |

We then enter in cell **K9** the following Named Range: **TABLE**

In another cell we enter **=SUM(INDIRECT(K9))**

This will indirectly Sum the values that reside in the Named Range TABLE, which is **1,007** in our example below:

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with the following data:

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | H | J | K |
|----|---|---|----|----|----|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | 38 | 25 | 43 | | | | |
| 10 | | | 85 | 32 | 27 | | | | |
| 11 | | | 42 | 32 | 24 | | | | |
| 12 | | | 79 | 99 | 8 | | | | |
| 13 | | | 6 | 32 | 13 | | | | |
| 14 | | | 91 | 70 | 16 | | | | |
| 15 | | | 48 | 18 | 13 | | | | |
| 16 | | | 61 | 88 | 17 | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | | | | | |

Formula bar: `=SUM(INDIRECT(K9))`

Named Range: TABLE

Result: 1,007

Imagine having several Named Ranges that reference different data sets within a Workbook & adding a drop down menu to show the different Named Ranges.

Using this technique you can pick & choose the different data sets and with the INDIRECT function return the summation of each, thus creating an interactive Dashboard!

LOOKUP

What does it do?

Looks up a value from a table array or one-row / one-column range

Formula breakdown:

=LOOKUP(lookup_value, lookup_vector, [result_vector])

What it means:

=LOOKUP(value to be approximately matched, range of values to be matched against, [the matching value to be displayed])

Example:

=LOOKUP(10000, C9:C14, D9:D14) = 18%

i.e. Approximate match in tax rate

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Have you ever tried getting approximate matches in Excel? **Approximate matches** are used when you have an ascending table like **Commission Bonus Rates** or **Income Tax Rates**.

If you have tried out [Vlookup Approximate Match in Excel](#), there is another cool way to do this! You can use the **LOOKUP Formula** to accomplish this as well.

IMPORTANT: For the LOOKUP Approximate Match to work in Excel, the lookup_vector has to be sorted in ascending order!

So the way that this formula works is that it looks at the first value in the **lookup_vector** that is greater than the **lookup_value** and then goes back one value. If a **result_vector** is provided, then the **LOOKUP Formula** will get the result from there, otherwise it simply gets it from the **lookup_vector**.

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the LOOKUP function in a blank cell:**

=LOOKUP(

| | C | D | F | F | G | H |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|---|--------------|-------------|---|
| 7 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | | ENTER INCOME | \$10,000.00 | |
| 8 | | | | | | |
| 9 | \$ - | 11% | | | | |
| 10 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | TAX RATE | =LOOKUP(| |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | | | |
| 12 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | | | |
| 13 | \$ 87,458.00 | 39% | | | | |
| 14 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | | | |

LOOKUP(lookup_value, lookup_vector, [result_vector])
 LOOKUP(lookup_value, array)

STEP 2: The **LOOKUP** arguments:

lookup_value

What is the value to be approximately matched?

Select the cell containing the value. In our case, it is the \$10,000 income:

=LOOKUP(G8,

| | C | D | F | G | H |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|--------------|-------------|---|
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | ENTER INCOME | \$10,000.00 | |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | | | |
| 10 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | TAX RATE | =LOOKUP(G8, | |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | | |
| 12 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | | |
| 13 | \$ 87,458.00 | 30% | | | |
| 14 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | | |

LOOKUP(lookup_value,lookup_vector,[result_vector])
LOOKUP(lookup_value,array)

lookup_vector

Where is the range of values to be matched against?

Now we need to select the range that contains the income values. It should be sorted in ascending order for the LOOKUP Formula to work.

=LOOKUP(G8, C9:C14,

| | C | D | F | G | H |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|--------------|---------------------|---|
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | ENTER INCOME | \$10,000.00 | |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | | | |
| 10 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | TAX RATE | =LOOKUP(G8, C9:C14, | |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | | |
| 12 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | | |
| 13 | \$ 87,458.00 | 30% | | | |
| 14 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | | |

LOOKUP(lookup_value,lookup_vector,[result_vector])
LOOKUP(lookup_value,array)

result_vector

Where is the range of values to contains the value to be displayed as the final result?

Now we need to select the range that contains the tax rates. This is what we want to display as our final result of the lookup.

```
=LOOKUP(G8, C9:C14, D9:D14)
```

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|---|--------------|-----------------------------|---|
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | | ENTER INCOME | \$10,000.00 | |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | | | | |
| 10 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | TAX RATE | =LOOKUP(G8, C9:C14, D9:D14) | |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | | | |
| 12 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | | | |
| 13 | \$ 87,458.00 | 39% | | | | |
| 14 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | | | |

It was able to find out that the tax rate is 18%!

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|---|--------------|-------------|
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | | ENTER INCOME | \$10,000.00 |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | | | |
| 10 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | TAX RATE | 18% |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | | |
| 12 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | | |
| 13 | \$ 87,458.00 | 39% | | | |
| 14 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | | |

MATCH

What does it do?

It returns the position of a value/text

Formula breakdown:

=MATCH(lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type])

What it means:

=MATCH(lookup this value, from this list or range of cells, return me the Exact Match)

Example:

=MATCH("Tablet",C12:C16,0) = 3

i.e. Tablet is in the 3rd position in the range

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The **MATCH** function in Excel returns the position of a value/text within a list or a range of cells.

Say that you have a Price List and want to know in which position a certain item is located within that Price List, then you would use the **MATCH** function.

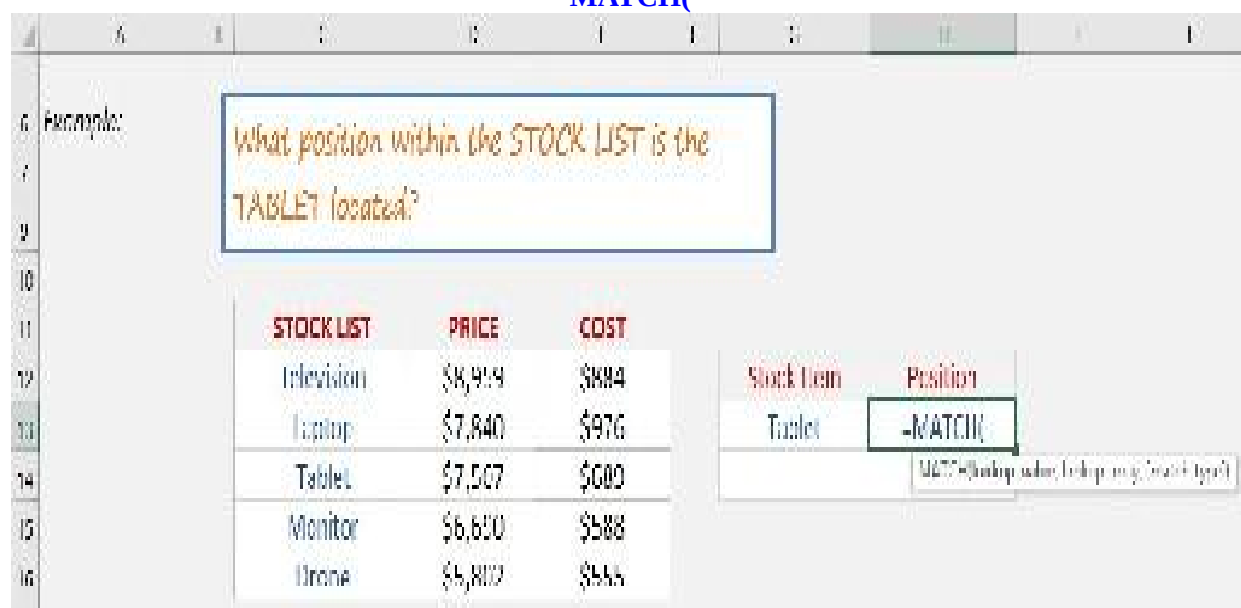
NB: The *lookup_value* argument can be a value (number, text, or logical value) or a cell reference to a number, text, or logical value.

We want to get the **position within the Stock list** where the **Tablet** is located.

STEP 1: Enter the following:

We need to enter the **MATCH** function in a blank cell:

=MATCH(



The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with the following data:

| STOCK LIST | PRICE | COST |
|------------|---------|-------|
| Television | \$8,999 | \$884 |
| Laptop | \$7,840 | \$976 |
| Tablet | \$7,507 | \$600 |
| Monitor | \$6,650 | \$588 |
| Drone | \$5,800 | \$555 |

To the right of the table, there is a smaller table with two columns: 'Stock Item' and 'Position'. The 'Tablet' is listed under 'Stock Item', and the cell under 'Position' contains the formula '=MATCH('. A tooltip for the MATCH function is visible below the formula cell, showing the syntax: MATCH(lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type]).

STEP 2: The **MATCH** arguments:

lookup_value

What is the value that we want to match?

We want to match the “Tablet”

=MATCH(G13,

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|---|---|-------------------|--------------|-------------|---|------------|-------------|
| 11 | | | STOCK LIST | PRICE | COST | | | |
| 12 | | | Television | \$8,959 | \$884 | | Stock Item | Position |
| 13 | | | Laptop | \$7,840 | \$976 | | Tablet | =MATCH(G13, |
| 14 | | | Tablet | \$7,507 | \$689 | | | |
| 15 | | | Monitor | \$6,690 | \$588 | | | |
| 16 | | | Drone | \$5,802 | \$555 | | | |

lookup_array

Where is the list that contains the stock items?

=MATCH(G13, C12:C16,

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J |
|----|---|---|-------------------|--------------|-------------|---|------------|---------------------|---|---|
| 11 | | | STOCK LIST | PRICE | COST | | | | | |
| 12 | | | Television | \$8,959 | \$884 | | Stock Item | Position | | |
| 13 | | | Laptop | \$7,840 | \$976 | | | =MATCH(G13,C12:C16, | | |
| 14 | | | Tablet | \$7,507 | \$689 | | | | | |
| 15 | | | Monitor | \$6,690 | \$588 | | | | | |
| 16 | | | Drone | \$5,802 | \$555 | | | | | |

MATCH(lookup_value,lookup_array,[match_type])

- 1 - Less than
- 0 - exact match
- 1 - Greater than

match_type

What kind of matching do you want?

Let's put in 0 to get the exact match

=MATCH(G13, C12:C16, 0)

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I |
|----|---|---|-------------------|--------------|-------------|---|-----------------------|----------|---|
| 11 | | | STOCK LIST | PRICE | COST | | | | |
| 12 | | | Television | \$8,959 | \$884 | | Stock Item | Position | |
| 13 | | | Laptop | \$7,840 | \$976 | | -MATCH(G13,C12:C16,0) | | |
| 14 | | | Tablet | \$7,507 | \$689 | | | | |
| 15 | | | Monitor | \$6,690 | \$588 | | | | |
| 16 | | | Drone | \$5,802 | \$555 | | | | |

less than
 Exact match
 Greater than

And with that, you will get that tablet is in Row #3!

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|---|---|-------------------|--------------|-------------|---|------------|----------|
| 11 | | | STOCK LIST | PRICE | COST | | | |
| 12 | | | Television | \$8,959 | \$884 | | Stock Item | Position |
| 13 | | | Laptop | \$7,840 | \$976 | | Tablet | 3 |
| 14 | | | Tablet | \$7,507 | \$689 | | | |
| 15 | | | Monitor | \$6,690 | \$588 | | | |
| 16 | | | Drone | \$5,802 | \$555 | | | |

VLOOKUP

What does it do?

Searches for a value in the first column of a table array and returns a value in the same row from another column (to the right) in the table array.

Formula breakdown:

=VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup])

What it means:

=VLOOKUP(this value, in this list, and get me value in this column, Exact Match/FALSE/0)

Example:

=VLOOKUP("Laptop",B14:D17,2,FALSE) = \$185

i.e. The price of the Laptop in the table

Exercise Workbook:

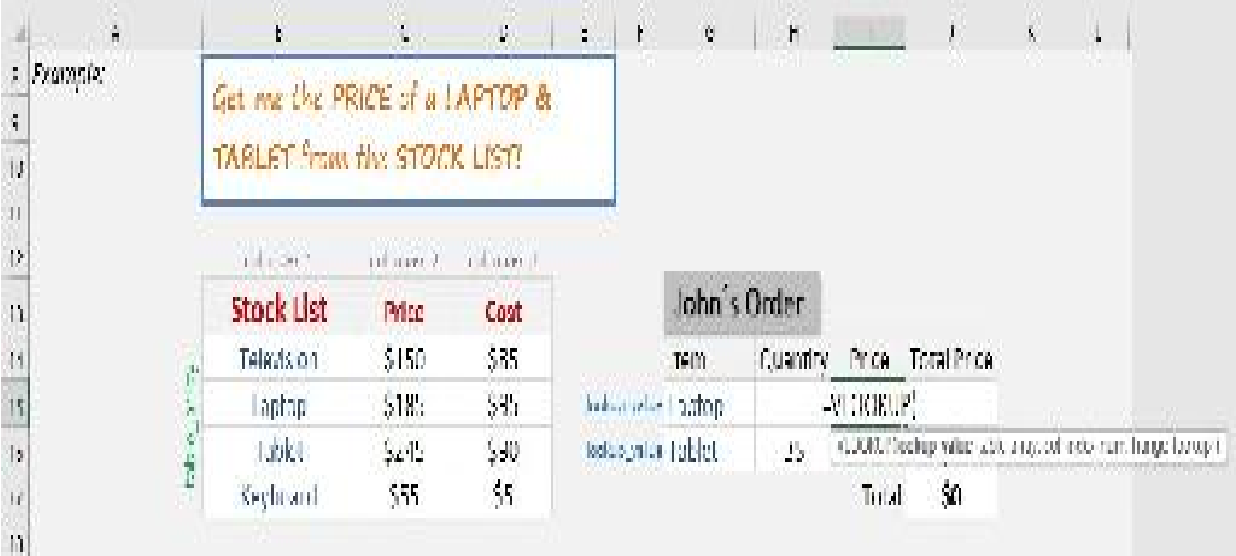
[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Excel's **VLOOKUP** function is arguably the most used function in Excel but can also be the most tricky one to understand. I will show you a **VLOOKUP** example and in a few steps you will be able to extract values from a table and use them to do your custom reports and analysis.

You will be using VLOOKUP with confidence after this!

STEP 1: We need to enter the **VLOOKUP** function in a blank cell:

=VLOOKUP(



STEP 2: The **VLOOKUP** arguments:

lookup_value

What is the value that you want to look for?

In our first example, it will be "Laptop", so select the Item name

=VLOOKUP(G15,

| col index 1 | col index 2 | col index 3 |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Stock List | Price | Cost |
| Television | \$150 | \$85 |
| Laptop | \$185 | \$95 |
| Tablet | \$245 | \$90 |
| Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 |

| John's Order | | | |
|--------------|----------|-------|-------------|
| Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
| Laptop | | | |
| Tablet | 35 | | |
| Total | | | \$0 |

table_array

What is the table or range of cells that contains all your data?

Make sure to select the stock list table so that our VLOOKUP formula will search here

=VLOOKUP(G15, B14:D17,

| col index 1 | col index 2 | col index 3 |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Stock List | Price | Cost |
| Television | \$150 | \$85 |
| Laptop | \$185 | \$95 |
| Tablet | \$245 | \$90 |
| Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 |

| John's Order | | | |
|--------------|----------|-------|-------------|
| Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
| Laptop | | | |
| Tablet | | | |
| Total | | | \$0 |

Ensure that you press **F4** so that you can lock the table range.

=VLOOKUP(G15, \$B\$14:\$D\$17,

| col index 1 | col index 2 | col index 3 |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Stock List | Price | Cost |
| Television | \$150 | \$85 |
| Laptop | \$185 | \$95 |
| Tablet | \$245 | \$90 |
| Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 |

| John's Order | | | |
|--------------|----------|-------|-------------|
| Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
| L | | | |
| Tablet | | | |
| Total | | | \$0 |

col_index_num

What is the column that you want to retrieve the value from?

Since we want to get the price, our price is on the 2nd column of our source data

=VLOOKUP(G15, \$B\$14:\$D\$17, 2,

| col_index_1 | col_index_2 | col_index_3 |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Stock List | Price | Cost |
| Television | \$150 | \$85 |
| Laptop | \$185 | \$95 |
| Tablet | \$215 | \$90 |
| Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 |

| John's Order | | | |
|--------------|----------|-------|-------------|
| Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
| Laptop | 1 | \$185 | \$185 |
| Tablet | 35 | \$215 | \$7525 |
| Total | | | \$7710 |

range_lookup

What kind of matching do you need?

*We want an exact match of the Laptop text so make sure **FALSE** is selected (or you can enter 0 instead of FALSE):*

=VLOOKUP(G15, \$B\$14:\$D\$17, 2, FALSE)

| col_index_1 | col_index_2 | col_index_3 |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Stock List | Price | Cost |
| Television | \$150 | \$85 |
| Laptop | \$185 | \$95 |
| Tablet | \$215 | \$90 |
| Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 |

| John's Order | | | |
|--------------|----------|-------|-------------|
| Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
| Laptop | 1 | \$185 | \$185 |
| Tablet | 35 | \$215 | \$7525 |
| Total | | | \$7710 |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K |
|----|---|-------------------|--------------|-------------|---|---|---|---------------------|----------|-------|-------------|
| 12 | | col_index_1 | col_index_2 | col_index_3 | | | | | | | |
| 13 | | Stock List | Price | Cost | | | | John's Order | | | |
| 14 | | Television | \$150 | \$85 | | | | Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
| 15 | | Laptop | \$185 | \$95 | | | | Laptop | 125 | 185 | \$23,125 |
| 16 | | Tablet | \$245 | \$90 | | | | Tablet | 35 | 245 | \$8,575 |
| 17 | | Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 | | | | | | Total | \$31,700 |
| 18 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 19 | | | | | | | | | | | |

You now have all of the results!

LOGICAL FUNCTIONS

AND

What does it do?

Checks if all of the conditions are satisfied or not

Formula breakdown:

=AND(logical1, [logical2], ...)

What it means:

=AND(first condition, [additional conditions], ...)

Example:

=AND(MONTH("1/01/18")=1, 1500 >1000) =TRUE

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Have a couple of conditions that you need to check for and ensure they are met? The **AND Formula** enforces this and will return **TRUE** if all of your required conditions are met!

Let us give this a try in our examples below. We want to **check if the date is in the month of January and the sales amount is greater than \$1000.**

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the *AND* function in a blank cell:

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------|----------|-------|---|
| 8 | DATE | SALES | =AND(| |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | \$ 1,500 | =AND(| |
| 10 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | | |
| 11 | 1/15/18 | \$ 500 | | |
| 12 | 3/15/18 | \$ 100 | | |
| 13 | 1/30/18 | \$ 3,000 | | |

AND(logical1, [logical2], ...)

STEP 2: The **AND** arguments:

logical1

What is the first condition?

Let us create the condition to get the month of the date and check if it is January i.e. 1

=AND(MONTH(C9)=1,

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------|----|-------------------|--|---|
| 8 | DATE | | | | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | \$ | =AND(MONTH(C9)=1, | | |
| 10 | 2/01/18 | \$ | | | |
| 11 | 1/15/18 | \$ | 500 | AND(logical1, [logical2], [logical3], ...) | |
| 12 | 3/15/18 | \$ | 100 | | |
| 13 | 1/30/18 | \$ | 3,000 | | |
| 14 | | | | | |
| 15 | | | | | |

[logical2]

What is the second condition?

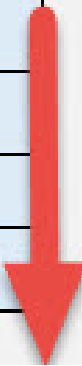
Let us create the condition to check if sales is greater than 1000:

=AND(MONTH(C9)=1, D9 > 1000)

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------|----|-----------------------------|---|
| 8 | DATE | | | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | \$ | =AND(MONTH(C9)=1, D9 >1000) | |
| 10 | 2/01/18 | \$ | | |
| 11 | 1/15/18 | \$ | 500 | |
| 12 | 3/15/18 | \$ | 100 | |
| 13 | 1/30/18 | \$ | 3,000 | |
| 14 | | | | |
| 15 | | | | |

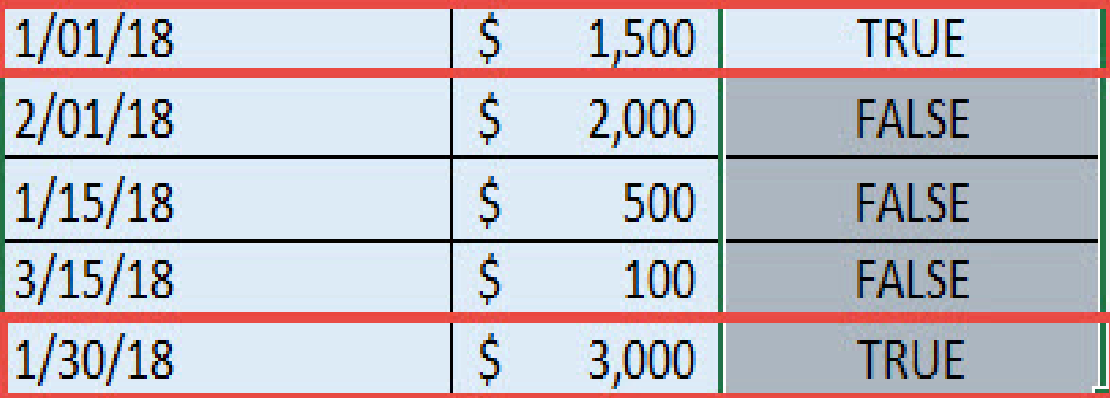
Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------|----------|---------------------------|
| 8 | DATE | SALES | JANUARY AND SALES > 1000? |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | \$ 1,500 | TRUE |
| 10 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | |
| 11 | 1/15/18 | \$ 500 | |
| 12 | 3/15/18 | \$ 100 | |
| 13 | 1/30/18 | \$ 3,000 | |
| 14 | | | |



You now have your results!

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------|----------|---------------------------|
| 8 | DATE | SALES | JANUARY AND SALES > 1000? |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | \$ 1,500 | TRUE |
| 10 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | FALSE |
| 11 | 1/15/18 | \$ 500 | FALSE |
| 12 | 3/15/18 | \$ 100 | FALSE |
| 13 | 1/30/18 | \$ 3,000 | TRUE |
| 14 | | | |
| 15 | | | |



IF

What does it do?

It returns a value that you set if a condition is met, and a value if it is not met

Formula breakdown:

=IF(Logical Test, Value if True, Value if False)

What it means:

=IF(The condition to be checked, Value to be shown if the condition is met, Value to be shown if condition is not met)

Example:

=IF(D15>3000, "Bonus", "No Bonus") = No Bonus

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The **IF function** is probably one of the most used Excel functions because it is easy to understand and very flexible when you apply it to real life situations.

Here I will show you a couple of ways that you can use the **IF function** to get you up and going.

We want to show a **Bonus** value if **sales are bigger than \$3000**, and **No Bonus** is shown if this condition is not met. Afterwards let's try computing the **10% bonus!**

STEP 1: We need to enter the **IF function** in a blank cell:

=IF(

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|----------|---|---------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 8 | | | | | | |
| 9 | Example: | <p>If a SALES REP has sold more than \$3,000, then give them a 10% BONUS!</p> | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | |
| 12 | | | | | | |
| 13 | | | | | | |
| 14 | | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | Bonus \$ |
| 15 | | John | North | \$1,092 | =IF(| |
| 16 | | Paul | South | \$9,951 | | |
| 17 | | Kingo | East | \$7,006 | | |
| 18 | | George | West | \$8,738 | | |
| 19 | | Ana | North | \$3,185 | | |
| 20 | | Marie | South | \$1,661 | | |
| 21 | | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | | |
| 22 | | Helen | West | \$457 | | |
| 23 | | Paula | North | \$1,935 | | |

STEP 2: The **IF** arguments:

logical_test

What is your condition?

Sales Rep has sold more than 3000 dollars.

=IF(D15>3000,

| | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | Bonus \$ |
| 15 | John | North | | =IF(D15>3000, | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | | |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | | |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | | |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | | |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | | |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$457 | | |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$4,935 | | |
| 24 | | | | | |

value_if_true

What value should be displayed if the condition is true?

We want "Bonus" to be displayed

=IF(D15>3000, "Bonus",

| | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | Bonus \$ |
| 15 | John | North | =IF(D15>3000, "Bonus", | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | | |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | | |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | | |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | | |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | | |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$457 | | |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$4,935 | | |

value_if_false

What value should be displayed if the condition is false?

We want "No Bonus" to be displayed

=IF(D15>3000, "Bonus", "No Bonus")

| | R | C | D | F | F |
|----|------------------|---------------|---|---------------|-----------------|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | Bonus \$ |
| 15 | John | | =IF(D15>3000, "Bonus", "No Bonus") | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | IF(logical_test, [value_if_true], [value_if_false]) | | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | | |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | | |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | | |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | | |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | | |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$457 | | |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$4,935 | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | Bonus \$ |
| 15 | John | North | \$1,092 | No Bonus | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | Bonus | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | No Bonus | |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | Bonus | |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | Bonus | |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | No Bonus | |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | Bonus | |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$457 | No Bonus | |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$4,935 | Bonus | |
| 24 | | | | | |

STEP 3: Let us now aim to give the **10% Bonus!**

The **IF** arguments:

logical_test

What is your condition?

Sales Rep has sold more than 3000 dollars.

=IF(D15>3000,

| | B | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | Bonus \$ | |
| 15 | John | North | \$1,092 | | =IF(D15>3000, | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | Bonus | | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | No Bonus | | |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | Bonus | | |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | Bonus | | |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | No Bonus | | |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | Bonus | | |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$457 | No Bonus | | |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$4,935 | Bonus | | |

value_if_true

What value should be displayed if the condition is true?

We want give a 10% bonus based on sales

=IF(D15>3000, D15*10%,

| | B | C | D | F | F | G |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | Bonus \$ | |
| 15 | John | North | \$1,092 | =IF(D15>3000, D15*10%, | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | Bonus | | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | No Bonus | | |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | Bonus | | |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | Bonus | | |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | No Bonus | | |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | Bonus | | |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$157 | No Bonus | | |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$1,935 | Bonus | | |

value_if_false

What value should be displayed if the condition is false?

Then no bonus amount should be given, type in 0

=IF(D15>3000, D15*10%, 0)

| | E | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------------------|-----------------|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | Bonus \$ | |
| 15 | John | North | \$1,092 | =IF(D15>3000, D15*10%, 0) | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | Bonus | | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,000 | No Bonus | | |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | Bonus | | |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | Bonus | | |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | No Bonus | | |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | Bonus | | |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$157 | No Bonus | | |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$4,935 | Bonus | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | Bonus \$ |
| 15 | John | North | \$1,092 | No Bonus | \$0 |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | Bonus | \$995 |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | No Bonus | \$0 |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | Bonus | \$874 |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | Bonus | \$319 |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | No Bonus | \$0 |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | Bonus | \$559 |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$457 | No Bonus | \$0 |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$4,935 | Bonus | \$494 |
| 24 | | | | | |

You now have all of results!

IFERROR

What does it do?

It returns a value that you set if a formula has an error

Formula breakdown:

=IFERROR(Value, Value if Error)

What it means:

=IFERROR(The Formula, What do you want to show if The Formula has an error?)

Example:

=IFERROR(0/0,0) =0

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

If you have a calculation that results in an error like, #N/A, #VALUE!, #REF!, #DIV/0!, #NUM!, #NAME?, then you can clean it up by using the **IFERROR** function which allows you to replace the error it with a 0, a blank cell "" or whatever value you like.

We want to get the **average sale of each record**. However we need to **handle division by zero errors gracefully**.

STEP 1: We need to enter the **IFERROR** function in a blank cell:

=IFERROR(

Example:

What is the **AVERAGE SALE** of each **SALES REP**?

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Units Sold | Avg Sale |
|-----------|--------|---------|------------|------------|
| John | North | \$0 | 0 | =IFERROR() |
| Paul | South | \$9,951 | 36 | |
| Ringo | East | \$2,006 | 75 | |
| George | West | \$0 | 0 | |

STEP 2: The **IFERROR** arguments:

value

What is the formula?

We need to enter the formula first to calculate the average sale.

`=IFERROR(D15/E15,`

| | B | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------------|-------------------|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Units Sold | Avg Sale | |
| 15 | John | North | \$0 | | =IFERROR(D15/E15, | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | 36 | | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | 25 | | |
| 18 | George | West | \$0 | 0 | | |

value_if_error


What value should be displayed if there is an error in the formula?

We want "0" to be displayed if there is an error

`=IFERROR(D15/E15, 0)`

| | B | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------------|----------------------|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Units Sold | Avg Sale | |
| 15 | John | North | \$0 | | =IFERROR(D15/E15, 0) | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | 36 | | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | 25 | | |
| 18 | George | West | \$0 | 0 | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | B | C | D | E | F | |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------------|-----------------|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Units Sold | Avg Sale | |
| 15 | John | North | \$0 | 0 | \$0 | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | 36 | \$276 | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | 25 | \$80 | |
| 18 | George | West | \$0 | 0 | \$0 | |
| 19 | | | | | |  |

You now have all of results!

OR

What does it do?

Checks if any one of the conditions is satisfied or not

Formula breakdown:

=OR(logical1, [logical2], ...)

What it means:

=OR(first condition, [additional conditions], ...)

Example:

=OR(MONTH(C9)=1,1500>1000) =TRUE

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Have a couple of conditions that you need to check for and ensure **at least one is met**? The **OR Formula** enforces this and will return TRUE if any one of your required conditions is met!

Let us give this a try in our examples below. We want to **check if the date is in the month of January OR the sales amount is greater than \$1000**.

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the OR function in a blank cell**:

=OR(

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------|----------|---|---|
| 8 | DATE | SALES | =OR(OR(logical1, [logical2], ...) | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | \$ 1,500 | | |
| 10 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | | |
| 11 | 1/15/18 | \$ 500 | | |
| 12 | 3/15/18 | \$ 100 | | |
| 13 | 1/30/18 | \$ 3,000 | | |
| | | | | |

STEP 2: The **OR** arguments:

logical1

What is the first condition?

Let us create the condition to get the month of the date and check if it is January:

=OR(MONTH(C9)=1,

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------|----|------------------|---|---|
| 8 | DATE | | | | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | \$ | =OR(MONTH(C9)=1, | | |
| 10 | 2/01/18 | \$ | | | |
| 11 | 1/15/18 | \$ | 500 | OR(logical1, [logical2], [logical3], ...) | |
| 12 | 3/15/18 | \$ | 100 | | |
| 13 | 1/30/18 | \$ | 3,000 | | |
| 14 | | | | | |

[logical2]

What is the second condition?


Let us create the condition to check if sales is greater than 1000:

=OR(MONTH(C9)=1, D9 > 1000)

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------|----|-----------------------------|---|---|
| 8 | DATE | | | | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | \$ | =OR(MONTH(C9)=1, D9 > 1000) | | |
| 10 | 2/01/18 | \$ | | | |
| 11 | 1/15/18 | \$ | 500 | | |
| 12 | 3/15/18 | \$ | 100 | | |
| 13 | 1/30/18 | \$ | 3,000 | | |
| 14 | | | | | |

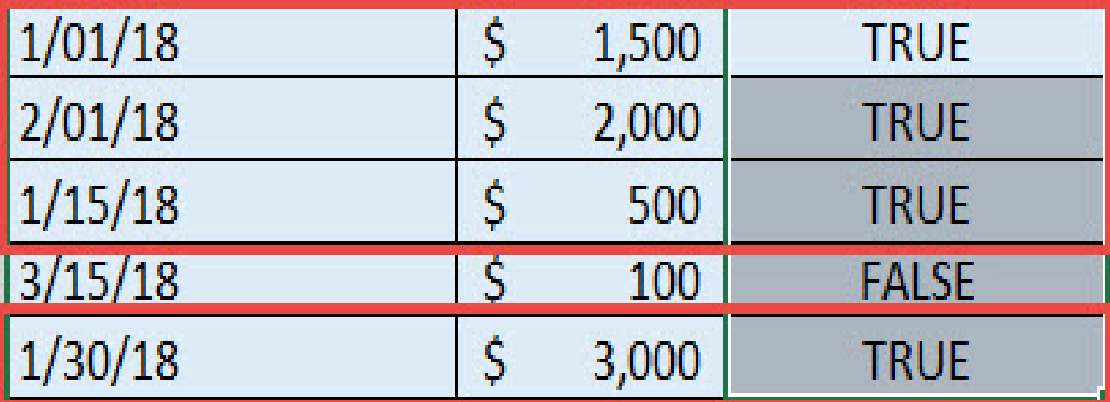
Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------|----------|--------------------------|
| 8 | DATE | SALES | JANUARY OR SALES > 1000? |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | \$ 1,500 | TRUE |
| 10 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | |
| 11 | 1/15/18 | \$ 500 | |
| 12 | 3/15/18 | \$ 100 | |
| 13 | 1/30/18 | \$ 3,000 | |
| 14 | | | |



You now have your results!

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------|----------|--------------------------|
| 8 | DATE | SALES | JANUARY OR SALES > 1000? |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | \$ 1,500 | TRUE |
| 10 | 2/01/18 | \$ 2,000 | TRUE |
| 11 | 1/15/18 | \$ 500 | TRUE |
| 12 | 3/15/18 | \$ 100 | FALSE |
| 13 | 1/30/18 | \$ 3,000 | TRUE |
| 14 | | | |
| 15 | | | |



MATH FUNCTIONS

COUNT

What does it do?

Counts the number of cells that contain numbers

Formula breakdown:

=COUNT(value1, [value2]...)

What it means:

=COUNT(range of cells to check, [additional cells to include in the check]...)

Example:

=COUNT(C9:C12) = 2

i.e. There are 2 cells with numbers in them

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Ever had a column of data and wanted to check if all of the values contain valid numbers?

It would be cumbersome to count and check them one by one, especially if you had hundreds of entries!

Imagine we have the following data, we see an error, a text and a couple of numbers:

| VALUES |
|---------|
| #DIV/0! |
| 3 |
| abc |
| 4 |

Thankfully there is an easy way to count how many of these cells contain valid numbers using the Excel's **COUNT** formula.

STEP 1: We need to enter the *COUNT* function in a blank cell:

=COUNT(

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------|---------|---|
| 8 | VALUES | | |
| 9 | #DIV/0! | =COUNT(| |
| 10 | 3 | | |
| 11 | abc | | |
| 12 | 4 | | |

COUNT(value1, [value2], ...)

STEP 2: The **COUNT** arguments:

value

What is the value / range of values that you want to check?

`=COUNT(C9:C12)`

| | C | D |
|----|---------|----------------|
| 8 | VALUES | |
| 9 | #DIV/0! | =COUNT(C9:C12) |
| 10 | 3 | |
| 11 | abc | |
| 12 | 4 | |

You now have your count of valid numbers!

| | C | D |
|----|---------|-------------------------|
| 8 | VALUES | # OF CELLS WITH NUMBERS |
| 9 | #DIV/0! | 2 |
| 10 | 3 | |
| 11 | abc | |
| 12 | 4 | |

COUNTA

What does it do?

Counts the number of cells that are non-blank/non-empty (including empty text "")

Formula breakdown:

=COUNTA(value1, [value2], ...)

What it means:

=COUNTA(value or range of cells to check, [value or range of cells to check], ...)

Example:

=COUNTA(B9:C12) = 6

i.e. There are 6 non-blank cells

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Do you have a scenario where you want to count the number of cells that **are non-blank or not empty?**

I'm sure you do! There is a simple way to count this with Excel's **COUNTA formula!**

This formula counts everything: numbers, text, non-empty text "", you name it!

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the COUNTA function in a blank cell.** Notice there are 6 non-blank cells in here:

`=COUNTA(`

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|-----------------|--------|--------|--|---|---|
| 8 | | ITEM # | COLOR | <code>=COUNTA(</code> <code>COUNTA(Avalue1, [value2], ...)</code> | | |
| 9 | | 1 | | | | |
| 10 | | 2 | | | | |
| 11 | Empty text "" > | | Red | | | |
| 12 | | 4 | Yellow | | | |

STEP 2: The **COUNTA** arguments:

value

What is the value or range of values that you want to check how many are non-blank?

`=COUNTA(B9:C12)`

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|------------------|--------|--------|-----------------|
| 8 | | ITEM # | COLOR | =COUNTA(B9:C12) |
| 9 | | 1 | | |
| 10 | | 2 | | |
| 11 | Empty Text "" -> | | Red | |
| 12 | | 4 | Yellow | |

You now have your count of values that are non-blank! There are 6 non-blank values!

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|------------------|--------|--------|-----------------------|
| 8 | | ITEM # | COLOR | NON-BLANK VALUE COUNT |
| 9 | | 1 | | 6 |
| 10 | | 2 | | |
| 11 | Empty Text "" -> | | Red | |
| 12 | | 4 | Yellow | |

COUNTBLANK

What does it do?

Counts the number of cells that are blank

Formula breakdown:

=COUNTBLANK([range](#))

What it means:

=COUNTBLANK([range of cells to check](#))

Example:

=COUNTBLANK([B9:C12](#)) =3

i.e. There are 3 blank cells

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Do you have a scenario where you want to count the number of cells that **are blank in your Excel data?**

If you are auditing your data and want to make sure that a blank cell is actually blank (and doesn't contain an invisible character), then this formula is for you.

STEP 1: We need to **enter the COUNTBLANK function in a blank cell:**

`=COUNTBLANK(`

| | B | C | D | E |
|----|--------|--------|---|---|
| 0 | ITEM # | COLOR | <code>=COUNTBLANK(</code> <code>COUNTBLANK(range)</code> | |
| 9 | 1 | | | |
| 10 | 2 | | | |
| 11 | | Red | | |
| 12 | 4 | Yellow | | |

STEP 2: The **COUNTBLANK** arguments:

range

What are the range of values that you want to check to see how many are blank?

`=COUNTBLANK(B9:C12)`

| | B | C | D | E |
|----|--------|--------|---------------------|---|
| 8 | ITEM # | COLOR | =COUNTBLANK(B9:C12) | |
| 9 | 1 | | | |
| 10 | 2 | | | |
| 11 | | Red | | |
| 12 | 4 | Yellow | | |

You now have your count of values that are blank! There are 3 blank values!

| | B | C | D | E |
|----|--------|--------|-------------------|---|
| 8 | ITEM # | COLOR | BLANK VALUE COUNT | |
| 9 | 1 | | 3 | |
| 10 | 2 | | | |
| 11 | | Red | | |
| 12 | 4 | Yellow | | |

COUNTIF

What does it do?

Counts the number of cells that matches your specified condition

Formula breakdown:

=COUNTIF(range, criteria)

What it means:

=COUNTIF(range of cells to check, condition to check against)

Example:

=COUNTIF(A9:A12, ">2") = 3

i.e. There are 3 cells that are greater than 2

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Do you have a scenario where you want to count the number of cells that **match a specific condition?**

I'm sure you do! There is a simple way to count this with Excel's **COUNTIF formula!**

The **COUNTIF formula** is very flexible indeed, so let us try to count the following from our Excel worksheet:

- Number of cells **greater than 2**
- Number of cells that have a **Yellow** value
- Number of cells that **start with the letter “J”**

| VALUES | GREATER THAN 2 | VALUES | YELLOW VALUES | VALUES | STARTS WITH LETTER J |
|--------|----------------|--------|---------------|---------|----------------------|
| 5 | | Blue | | John | |
| 3 | | Yellow | | Jenny | |
| abc | | Red | | Michael | |
| 4 | | Yellow | | Jones | |

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the COUNTIF function in a blank cell:**

=COUNTIF(

| VALUES | | VALU |
|--------|-----------|------|
| 5 | =COUNTIF(| |
| 3 | | |
| abc | | |
| 4 | | |

COUNTIF(range, criteria)

STEP 2: The COUNTIF arguments:

range

What are the range of values that you want to check your condition against?

=COUNTIF(A9:A12,

| | A | B |
|----|--------|--------------------------|
| 8 | VALUES | |
| 9 | 5 | =COUNTIF(A9:A12, |
| 10 | 3 | |
| 11 | abc | COUNTIF(range, criteria) |
| 12 | 4 | |

criteria

What is the condition that you want to check against?

For our 1st example, we want to count the number of values greater than 2.

=COUNTIF(A9:A12, ">2")

| | A | B |
|----|--------|-----------------------|
| 8 | VALUES | =COUNTIF(A9:A12,">2") |
| 9 | 5 | |
| 10 | 3 | |
| 11 | abc | |
| 12 | 4 | |

You now have your count of numbers greater than 2!

| | A | B |
|----|--------|----------------|
| 8 | VALUES | GREATER THAN 2 |
| 9 | 5 | 3 |
| 10 | 3 | |
| 11 | abc | |
| 12 | 4 | |

STEP 3: Now let us try for counting the number of **Yellow** values:

=COUNTIF(C9:C12, "Yellow")

| | C | D |
|----|--------|----------------------------|
| 8 | VALUES | =COUNTIF(C9:C12, "Yellow") |
| 9 | Blue | |
| 10 | Yellow | |
| 11 | Red | |
| 12 | Yellow | |

COUNTIF(range, criteria)

You now have your count of values that have the Yellow text!

| | C | D |
|----|--------|---------------|
| 8 | VALUES | YELLOW VALUES |
| 9 | Blue | 2 |
| 10 | Yellow | |
| 11 | Red | |
| 12 | Yellow | |

STEP 4: Now let us try for counting the number of names **starting with the Letter J:**

Let us use the wildcard expression **J***

* signifies a wildcard character i.e. Return any value that **begins with a J**

=COUNTIF(E9:E12, "J*")

| | E | F |
|----|---------|--|
| 8 | VALUES | =COUNTIF(E9:E12, "J*") COUNTIF(range, criteria) |
| 9 | John | |
| 10 | Jenny | |
| 11 | Michael | |
| 12 | Jones | |

You now have your count of values that have a starting letter of J!

| | E | F |
|----|---------|----------------------|
| 8 | VALUES | STARTS WITH LETTER J |
| 9 | John | 3 |
| 10 | Jenny | |
| 11 | Michael | |
| 12 | Jones | |

COUNTIFS

What does it do?

Counts the number of cells that matches multiple conditions

Formula breakdown:

=COUNTIFS(range1, criteria1, [range2], [criteria2], ...)

What it means:

=COUNTIFS(range of cells to check1, condition to check against1, [range of cells to check2], [condition to check against2], ...)

Example:

=COUNTIFS(A9:A13, "John", C9:C13, ">10000") = 2

i.e. The number of times John got more than \$10,000 in sales

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Do you have a scenario where you want to count the number of cells that **match specific conditions**?

I'm sure you do! There is a simple way to count this with Excel's **COUNTIFS** formula!

This is very similar to the [CountIf Formula](#)! The only difference is it allows you to add even more conditions as needed...That's POWERFUL!

The **COUNTIFS** formula is very flexible indeed, so let us try to count the following from our Excel worksheet:

- Number of times **John got more than 10,000 sales**
- Number of times **Kim got more than 18,000 sales**

| Person | Year | Sales | How many times John got more than 10,000 sales |
|--------|------|-------|--|
| John | 2016 | 15000 | |
| Kim | 2016 | 20000 | |
| | | | How many times Kim got more than 18,000 sales |
| Matt | 2016 | 5000 | |
| Kim | 2017 | 17000 | |
| John | 2017 | 16000 | |

STEP 1: Let us target the first question: *How many times John got more than 10,000 sales?*

We need to **enter the COUNTIFS** function in a blank cell:

=COUNTIFS(

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|--------|------|-------|---|---|---|
| 8 | Person | Year | Sales | | | |
| 9 | John | 2016 | 15000 | =COUNTIFS(How many times Kim got more than 18,000 sales | | |
| 10 | Kim | 2016 | 20000 | | | |
| 11 | Matt | 2016 | 5000 | | | |
| 12 | Kim | 2017 | 17000 | | | |
| 13 | John | 2017 | 16000 | | | |

STEP 2: The COUNTIFS arguments:

range1, criteria1

What is our first condition?

We want to find the names that match "John"

=COUNTIFS(A9:A13, "John",

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|--------|------|-------|--|---|---|
| 8 | Person | Year | Sales | | | |
| 9 | John | 2016 | 15000 | =COUNTIFS(A9:A13, "John", How many times Kim got more than 18,000 sales | | |
| 10 | Kim | 2016 | 20000 | | | |
| 11 | Matt | 2016 | 5000 | | | |
| 12 | Kim | 2017 | 17000 | | | |
| 13 | John | 2017 | 16000 | | | |

range2, criteria2

What is our second condition?

We want to find sales that are more than 10,000

`=COUNTIFS(A9:A13, "John", C9:C13, ">10000")`

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|--------|------|-------|---|---|
| | Person | Year | Sales | | |
| 9 | John | 2016 | 15000 | =COUNTIFS(A9:A13, "John", C9:C13, ">10000") | |
| 10 | Kim | 2016 | 20000 | | |
| 11 | Matt | 2016 | 5000 | | |
| 12 | Kim | 2017 | 17000 | | |
| 13 | John | 2017 | 16000 | | |

How many times Kim got more than 18,000 sales

You now have your count of 2!

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|--------|------|-------|--|
| | Person | Year | Sales | How many times John got more than 10,000 sales |
| 9 | John | 2016 | 15000 | 2 |
| 10 | Kim | 2016 | 20000 | |
| 11 | Matt | 2016 | 5000 | How many times Kim got more than 18,000 sales |
| 12 | Kim | 2017 | 17000 | |
| 13 | John | 2017 | 16000 | |

STEP 3: Now let us try doing the same for Kim!

range1, criteria1

What is our first condition?

We want to find the names that match "Kim"

`=COUNTIFS(A9:A13, "Kim",`

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|--------|------|-------|--|---|---|
| 8 | Person | Year | Sales | How many times John got more than 10,000 sales | | |
| 9 | John | 2016 | 15000 | | 2 | |
| 10 | Kim | 2016 | 20000 | | | |
| 11 | Matt | 2016 | 5000 | | | |
| 12 | Kim | 2017 | 17000 | | | |
| 13 | John | 2017 | 16000 | | | |

`COUNTIFS(A9:A13, "Kim",`

COUNTIFS(criteria_range1, criteria1, [criteria_range2, criteria2], ...)

range2, criteria2

What is our second condition?

We want to find the sales that are more than 18,000

`=COUNTIFS(A9:A13, "Kim", C9:C13, ">18000")`

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|--------|------|-------|--|---|---|
| 8 | Person | Year | Sales | How many times John got more than 10,000 sales | | |
| 9 | John | 2016 | 15000 | | 2 | |
| 10 | Kim | 2016 | 20000 | | | |
| 11 | Matt | 2016 | 5000 | | | |
| 12 | Kim | 2017 | 17000 | | | |
| 13 | John | 2017 | 16000 | | | |

`=COUNTIFS(A9:A13, "Kim", C9:C13, ">18000")`

You now have your count of 1!

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|--------|------|-------|--|
| 8 | Person | Year | Sales | How many times John got more than 10,000 sales |
| 9 | John | 2016 | 15000 | 2 |
| 10 | Kim | 2016 | 20000 | |
| 11 | Matt | 2016 | 5000 | How many times Kim got more than 18,000 sales |
| 12 | Kim | 2017 | 17000 | 1 |
| 13 | John | 2017 | 16000 | |

You can have more than 2 conditions in the COUNTIFS formula, so go crazy with the COUNTIFS!

MOD

What does it do?

Gives you the remainder after dividing one number with another

Formula breakdown:

=MOD(number1, number2)

What it means:

=MOD(a number, divided by this number)

Example:

=MOD(15,4) =3

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

In Excel it is very easy to divide two numbers.

But how about if you need to get the remainder from a division operation?

For example, let's do this the manual way, divide 15 by 4:

- Divide the two numbers (i.e. $15 / 4$)
- Get the quotient (which is 3)
- Multiply it back to the divisor ($3 * 4$)
- Subtract it from the original number ($15 - 12$)
- And I have the remainder! (3)

So, 4 goes into 13 three times with a remainder of 1.

Thankfully we can do the above complex and manual calculation with ease using Excel's **MOD formula!**

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the MOD function:**

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|--------|------------|----------------------|---|
| 8 | NUMBER | DIVIDED BY | | |
| 9 | 50 | 10 | =MOD(| |
| 10 | 15 | 4 | | |
| 11 | 21 | 5 | MOD(number, divisor) | |
| 12 | 13 | 5 | | |

STEP 2: The MOD arguments:

number1

What is the first number that we plan to divide?

Reference the cell that contains the first number:

=MOD(C9,

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|--------|------------|----------------------|---|
| 8 | NUMBER | DIVIDED BY | | |
| 9 | 50 | 10 | =MOD(C9, | |
| 10 | 15 | 4 | | |
| 11 | 21 | 5 | MOD(number, divisor) | |
| 12 | 13 | 5 | | |

number2

What is the divisor?

Reference the cell that contains the second number:


=MOD(C9, D9)

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|--------|------------|--------------|---|
| 8 | NUMBER | DIVIDED BY | | |
| 9 | 50 | 10 | =MOD(C9, D9) | |
| 10 | 15 | 4 | | |
| 11 | 21 | 5 | | |
| 12 | 13 | 5 | | |

STEP 3: Do the same for the rest of the cells by dragging the **MOD** formula all the way down using the left mouse button.

Now you are able to get the remainders of all the division operations!

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|------------|-----------|
| 8 | NUMBER | DIVIDED BY | REMAINDER |
| 9 | 50 | 10 | 0 |
| 10 | 15 | 4 | 3 |
| 11 | 21 | 5 | 1 |
| 12 | 13 | 5 | 3 |
| 13 | | | |



PERCENTAGE

What does it do?

In calculating percentages in Excel, there are a lot of ways that you could do this:

- What is the percentage of a number?
- What is the percentage change of value i.e. The percentage increase or decrease
- What is the proportion against a total value?

| Calculate Percentage | Formula | Sample | Result |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--|--------|
| Of a Number | = Number * Percentage | What is 75% of 100? | |
| Change | =(New - Old) / Old | What is the price change if the price increased from 100 to 150? | |
| Proportionally | = Portion / Total | What is your percentage if you took 20 shots and 12 went in? | |

Example:

$$=75\% * 100 =75$$

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

STEP 1: What is the percentage of a number?

To calculate the percentage of the number, simply multiply the number and the percentage together:

Percentage x Number

$$75\% * 100$$

| Calculate Percentage | Formula | Sample | Result |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--|----------|
| Of a Number | = Number * Percentage | What is 75% of 100? | -75%*100 |
| Change | = (New - Old) / Old | What is the price change if the price increased from 100 to 150? | |
| Proportionally | = Portion / Total | What is your percentage if you took 20 shots and 12 went in? | |

STEP 2: What is the percentage change of value i.e. The percentage increase or decrease

To calculate the change in value as a percentage, get the difference of the new value and the old value, then divide it by the old value:

$$(New - Old) / Old$$

$$(150 - 100) / 100$$

| Calculate Percentage | Formula | Sample | Result |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--|----------------------|
| Of a Number | = Number * Percentage | What is 75% of 100? | 75 |
| Change | = (New - Old) / Old | What is the price change if the price increased from 100 to 150? | $-(150 - 100) / 100$ |
| Proportionally | = Portion / Total | What is your percentage if you took 20 shots and 12 went in? | |

STEP 3: What is the proportion against a total value?

To get the proportion as a percentage, divide the portion by the total amount:

Portion / Total

12/20

| Calculate Percentage | Formula | Sample | Result |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--|-------------|
| Of a Number | = Number * Percentage | What is 75% of 100? | 75 |
| Change | = (New - Old) / Old | What is the price change if the price increased from 100 to 150? | 0.5 |
| Proportionally | = Portion / Total | What is your percentage if you took 20 shots and 12 went in? | $= 12 / 20$ |

STEP 4: We are almost done! The last two values are not in the percentage format, so let's fix that.

Select the last two values and go to **Home > Number > %**

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Excel interface. The Home ribbon is active, and the Number group is selected, with the percentage symbol (%) highlighted. A red arrow points from the percentage symbol to the 'Result' column of a table below. The table contains three rows of percentage calculations.

| | Calculate Percentage | Formula | Sample | Result |
|----|----------------------|---------------------|--|--------|
| 9 | Of a Number | Number * Percentage | What is 75% of 100? | 75 |
| 10 | Change | (New - Old) / Old | What is the price change if the price increased from 100 to 150? | 0.5 |
| 11 | Proportionally | Partion / Total | What is your percentage if you took 20 shots and 12 went in? | 0.6 |

Your percentage values are now all ready!

| Calculate Percentage | Formula | Sample | Result |
|----------------------|--|--|--------|
| Of a Number | $= \text{Number} \times \text{Percentage}$ | What is 75% of 100? | 75 |
| Change | $= (\text{New} - \text{Old}) / \text{Old}$ | What is the price change if the price increased from 100 to 150? | 50% |
| Proportionally | $= \text{Portion} / \text{Total}$ | What is your percentage if you took 20 shots and 12 went in? | 60% |

RAND

What does it do?

Gives you a random number between 0 and 1

Formula breakdown:

=RAND()

What it means:

=RAND(Will automatically choose a random number between 0 and 1)

Example:

=RAND() =0.151018728113863

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Excel is able to do a lot of things that most users are unaware of! One thing that amazes me & I use almost daily is its ability to create random numbers for me!

But why would I even need random numbers?

Random numbers in Excel are great if you want to fill in a column with random values so you can create quick charts or just do any kind of random Excel analysis.

One of my best uses of the RAND function in Excel is to create random numbers for a raffle draw!

STEP 1: We need to **enter the RAND function:**

=RAND()

| | C | D |
|----|------------------|---------|
| 8 | NAME | |
| 9 | Talon Ferguson | =RAND() |
| 10 | Doris Velez | |
| 11 | John Michaloudis | |
| 12 | Cain Sawyer | |

STEP 2: Do the same for the rest of the cells by dragging the **RAND** formula all the way down using the left mouse button.

Now we are able to get random numbers for all the entries without any bias!

I'm actually the winner in this case as I have the lowest value!

| | C | D | |
|----|------------------|-------------|---|
| 8 | NAME | ORDERING | |
| 9 | Talon Ferguson | 0.470801459 | 3 |
| 10 | Doris Velez | 0.748925937 | 4 |
| 11 | John Michaloudis | 0.162699696 | 1 |
| 12 | Cain Sawyer | 0.426500841 | 2 |
| 13 | | | |

TIP: Press the **F9** button on your keyboard to refresh/update the RAND values until you get your desired result...with bias :)

RANDBETWEEN

What does it do?

Returns a random integer number between the numbers you specify.

Formula breakdown:

=RANDBETWEEN(bottom number, top number)

What it means:

=RANDBETWEEN(bottom number of the range, top number of the range)

Example:

=RANDBETWEEN(10,10000) =2852

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

I use the **RANDBETWEEN** function all the time whenever I need to create a sample data set.

The cool thing about the **RANDBETWEEN** function is that if you don't like the numbers that it has given you, you can press F9 in a cell and it will give you new numbers.

We want to enter some random numbers from 10 to 10,000.

STEP 1: We need to enter the **RANDBETWEEN** function in a blank cell:

=RANDBETWEEN(

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|----------|--|--------|--------|---|
| 9 | Example: | Enter some random numbers from \$10 to \$10,000 | | | |
| 10 | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | |
| 12 | | | | | |
| 13 | | | | | |
| 14 | | TEST 1 | TEST 2 | TEST 3 | |
| 15 | | =RANDBETWEEN(| | | |
| 16 | | RANDBETWEEN(bottom, top) | | | |
| 17 | | | | | |
| 18 | | | | | |
| 19 | | | | | |
| 20 | | | | | |
| 21 | | | | | |
| 22 | | | | | |
| 23 | | | | | |

STEP 2: The **RANDBETWEEN** arguments:

bottom_number

What is your minimum value?

For our example it's 10

=RANDBETWEEN(10,

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|---|--------------------------|--------|--------|
| 14 | | TEST 1 | TEST 2 | TEST 3 |
| 15 | | =RANDBETWEEN(10, | | |
| 16 | | RANDBETWEEN(bottom, top) | | |

top_number

What is your maximum value?

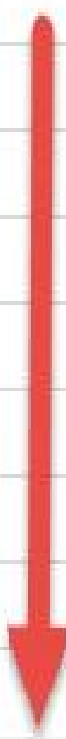
For our example it's 10,000

=RANDBETWEEN(10, 10000)

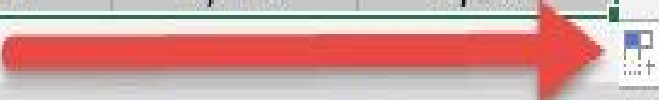
| | A | B | C | D |
|----|---|-------------------------|--------|--------|
| 14 | | TEST 1 | TEST 2 | TEST 3 |
| 15 | | =RANDBETWEEN(10, 10000) | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards. Then drag it to the right to populate all the cells.

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|---|---------------|---------------|---------------|---|
| 14 | | TEST 1 | TEST 2 | TEST 3 | |
| 15 | | 1,914 | | | |
| 16 | | 5,139 | | | |
| 17 | | 276 | | | |
| 18 | | 3,503 | | | |
| 19 | | 5,056 | | | |
| 20 | | 9,816 | | | |
| 21 | | 49 | | | |
| 22 | | 9,391 | | | |
| 23 | | 8,062 | | | |
| 24 | | | | | |



| | A | B | C | D |
|----|---|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 14 | | TEST 1 | TEST 2 | TEST 3 |
| 15 | | 7,968 | 9,746 | 9,968 |
| 16 | | 9,465 | 9,983 | 4,130 |
| 17 | | 1,663 | 1,125 | 8,118 |
| 18 | | 4,062 | 3,325 | 3,753 |
| 19 | | 5,196 | 7,736 | 3,078 |
| 20 | | 5,709 | 7,081 | 6,717 |
| 21 | | 5,605 | 676 | 4,005 |
| 22 | | 4,382 | 3,773 | 2,131 |
| 23 | | 3,347 | 9,976 | 1,989 |
| 24 | | | | |



You now have all of the random numbers!

ROUND

What does it do?

Rounds a number to the nearest decimal based on your specified number of digits

Formula breakdown:

=ROUND(number, num_digits)

What it means:

=ROUND(the number, number of decimal places to round off)

Example:

=ROUND(1.234567, 2) =1.23

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Ever had the need to round off numbers?

I do it all the time in my financial calculations. For example, if I need to calculate *percentage discounts* and it gives me a number such as \$47.4189349, rounding it off to \$47.40 (round off to 1 decimal place) makes it so much more presentable!

STEP 1: We need to **enter the ROUND function:**

=ROUND(

| | B | C | D |
|----|----------|-------------|---------------------------|
| 8 | NUMBER | # OF DIGITS | |
| 9 | 1.234567 | 0 | =ROUND(|
| 10 | 1.234567 | 1 | |
| 11 | 1.234567 | 2 | ROUND(number, num_digits) |
| 12 | 1.234567 | 3 | |

STEP 2: The ROUND arguments:

number

What is the number we want to round off?

Reference the cell that contains the number:

=ROUND(B9,

| | B | C | D |
|----|---------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| 8 | NUMBER | # OF DIGITS | |
| 9 | 1.234567 | 0 | =ROUND(B9, |
| 10 | 1.234567 | 1 | |
| 11 | 1.234567 | 2 | ROUND(number, num_digits) |
| 12 | 1.234567 | 3 | |

num_digits

Round off to how many digits?


Reference the cell that contains the number of digits:

=ROUND(B9, C9)

| | B | C | D |
|----|---------------|--------------------|----------------|
| 8 | NUMBER | # OF DIGITS | |
| 9 | 1.234567 | 0 | =ROUND(B9, C9) |
| 10 | 1.234567 | 1 | |
| 11 | 1.234567 | 2 | |
| 12 | 1.234567 | 3 | |

STEP 3: Do the same for the rest of the cells by dragging the **ROUND** formula all the way down using the left mouse button.

| | B | C | D |
|----|----------|-------------|--------|
| 8 | NUMBER | # OF DIGITS | RESULT |
| 9 | 1.234567 | 0 | 1 |
| 10 | 1.234567 | 1 | 1.2 |
| 11 | 1.234567 | 2 | 1.23 |
| 12 | 1.234567 | 3 | 1.235 |
| 13 | | | |



SUBTOTAL

What does it do?

It returns a Subtotal in a list or database

Formula breakdown:

=SUBTOTAL(function_num, ref1)

What it means:

=SUBTOTAL(function number 1-11 includes manually-hidden rows & 101-111 excludes them, your list or range of data)

Example:

=SUBTOTAL(9,B2:B9) = \$1,945

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD WORKBOOK](#)

The SUBTOTAL function in Excel has many great features, like the ability to:

- * Return a **SUM, AVERAGE, COUNT, COUNTA, MAX or MIN** from your data;
- * **Include hidden values** within your data by entering the first argument *function_num*, as values between 1-11;
- * **Ignore hidden values** within your data by entering the first argument *function_num*, as values between 101-111;
- * Find the SUBTOTAL of **filtered values**;
- * Ignore other SUBTOTALS that are included in your range, **avoiding any double counting!**

AVOIDING DOUBLE COUNTING WITH THE SUBTOTAL FUNCTION...


This is probably the most useful feature within the SUBTOTAL function!

Let's say you have various SUBTOTALS within your data, one SUBTOTAL to **Sum** the North Region and another SUBTOTAL to **Sum** the South Region.

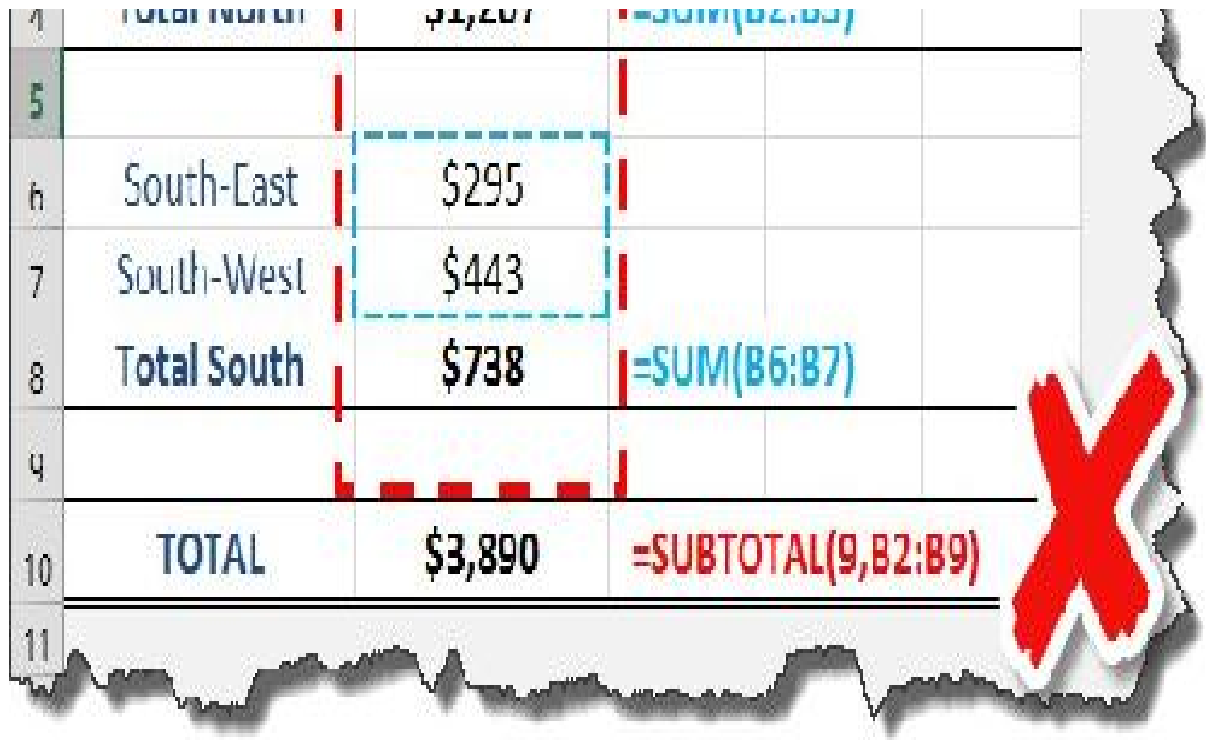
You can include a third SUBTOTAL for your Grand Total which references all of your data and ignoring the North & South Region SUBTOTALS, meaning that there is **no double counting** in your Grand Total.

See the below images of how this works with the SUBTOTAL function and how it double counts when using the SUM function:

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|--------------------|----------------|---------------------------|---|---|
| 1 | REGION | Q1 | | | |
| 2 | North-East | \$657 | | | |
| 3 | North-West | \$550 | | | |
| 4 | Total North | \$1,207 | =SUBTOTAL(9,B2:B3) | | |
| 5 | | | | | |
| 6 | South-East | \$295 | | | |
| 7 | South-West | \$443 | | | |
| 8 | Total South | \$738 | =SUBTOTAL(9,B6:B7) | | |
| 9 | | | | | |
| 10 | TOTAL | \$1,945 | =SUBTOTAL(9,B2:B9) | | |
| 11 | | | | | |



| | A | B | C | D | E |
|---|--------------------|----------------|--------------------|---|---|
| 1 | REGION | Q1 | | | |
| 2 | North-East | \$657 | | | |
| 3 | North-West | \$550 | | | |
| 4 | Total North | \$1,207 | =SUM(B2:B3) | | |



Values for the SUBTOTAL *function_num*:

| Includes hidden values | Ignores hidden values | Function |
|------------------------|-----------------------|----------|
| 1 | 101 | AVERAGE |
| | 102 | COUNT |
| 3 | 103 | COUNTA |
| | 104 | MAX |
| 5 | 105 | MIN |
| | 106 | PRODUCT |
| 7 | 107 | STDEV |

| | | |
|----|-----|--------|
| | 108 | STDEVP |
| 9 | 109 | SUM |
| | 110 | VAR |
| 11 | 111 | VARP |

SUMIF

What does it do?

Sums the values in a range that meet a criteria that you specify

Formula breakdown:

=SUMIF(Range or Cells, Criteria, [Sum_Range])

What it means:

=SUMIF(Evaluate this Range/Cells, With this Criteria, [Optional Sum Range])

Example:

=SUMIF(D15:D23,">3000") = \$17,435

i.e. Sum of all the values that are above \$3,000

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The **SUMIF** function is used widely amongst spreadsheet users as it is a simple Excel function. It allows you to Sum the values in a range that meet a criteria that you specify.

So if you want to Sum a range of sales values that are above \$3,000 then this is the best Excel function to use, as I explain below.

We want to get the sum of the sales amounts that are above \$3000.

STEP 1: We need to enter the **SUMIF** function in a blank cell:

=SUMIF(

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with the following data table:

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt |
|-----------|--------|---------|-----|
| John | North | \$2,500 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$3,456 | |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$9,854 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,569 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$4,123 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$1,458 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,562 | 1 |

Next to the table, there is a text box asking: "What's the SUM of the SALES above \$3,000?". Below this, a cell contains the formula **=SUMIF(**. A tooltip for the SUMIF function is visible, showing the syntax: **SUMIF(range; criteria; [sum_range])**.

STEP 2: The **SUMIF** arguments:

range

What is your range that contains the source data?

Highlight the column that contains the sales data

=SUMIF(D15:D23,

| | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|---|------------------------------------|---|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | | | |
| 15 | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | | Answer: | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$3,156 | | | =SUMIF(D15:D23, | | |
| 17 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | SUMIF(range, criteria, sum_range)) | | |
| 18 | George | South | \$9,854 | 4 | | | | |
| 19 | John | North | \$2,569 | 1 | | | | |
| 20 | Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 | | | | |
| 21 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | | |
| 22 | George | South | \$1,458 | 4 | | | | |
| 23 | John | North | \$2,562 | 1 | | | | |

criteria

Which records do you want to sum together?

Since we want to sum the amounts greater than 3000, then let's type in >3000

=SUMIF(D15:D23, ">3000")

| | E | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|---|--------------------------|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | | |
| 15 | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | | Answer: | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$3,456 | | | =SUMIF(D15:D23, ">3000") | |
| 17 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | |
| 18 | George | South | \$9,854 | 4 | | | |
| 19 | John | North | \$2,569 | 1 | | | |
| 20 | Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 | | | |
| 21 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | |
| 22 | George | South | \$1,458 | 4 | | | |
| 23 | John | North | \$2,562 | 1 | | | |

Just like that, Excel has selectively found the values and summed them together!

| | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|---|----------|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | | |
| 15 | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | | Answer: | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$3,456 | 2 | | \$17,435 | |
| 17 | Ringo | North | \$7,568 | 3 | | | |
| 18 | George | South | \$9,854 | 4 | | | |
| 19 | John | North | \$2,569 | 1 | | | |
| 20 | Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 | | | |
| 21 | Ringo | North | \$2,508 | 3 | | | |
| 22 | George | South | \$1,458 | 4 | | | |
| 23 | John | North | \$2,562 | 1 | | | |

SUMIFS

What does it do?

Sums multiple criteria

Formula breakdown:

=SUMIFS(**Sum_Range**,**Criteria_Range1**,**Criteria1**,**Criteria_Range2**,**Criteria 2...**)

What it means:

=SUMIFS(**Return the Sum from this Range**,**Evaluate this Range**,**With this Criteria**,**Evaluate that Range**,**With that Criteria...**)

Example:

=SUMIFS(**D15:D23**,**B15:B23**,"john",**C15:C23**,"north") = \$7,631

i.e. Total sales for John in the North region

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The **SUMIFS** function allows you to Sum multiple criteria.

For example, you can select one Sales Rep from a list of Sales Reps and select one Region from a list of Regions and return the Sum of those arguments from a Sales list. See how easy it is...

We want to get the **sum of the sales amounts** for **John** in the **North Region**.

STEP 1: We need to enter the **SUMIFS** function in a blank cell:

=SUMIFS(

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with the following data:

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt |
|-----------|--------|---------|-----|
| John | North | \$2,500 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$3,456 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| John | South | \$9,854 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,569 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| John | South | \$1,458 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,562 | 1 |

Cell G9 contains the text: "What's the SUM of the SALES for John in the NORTH region?"

Cell G10 contains the text: "Answer:"

Cell G11 contains the formula: "=SUMIFS("

STEP 2: The **SUMIFS** arguments:

range

What is your range that contains the data to add together?

*Highlight the column that contains the **Sales** data*

=SUMIFS(D15:D23,

| | D | E | F | G | H | I | J |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|---|---|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | | |
| 15 | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$3,456 | 2 | | | |
| 17 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | |
| 18 | John | South | \$9,854 | 4 | | | |
| 19 | John | North | \$2,569 | 1 | | | |
| 20 | Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 | | | |
| 21 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | |
| 22 | John | South | \$1,158 | 4 | | | |
| 23 | John | North | \$2,567 | 1 | | | |

Answer:
=SUMIFS(D15:D23,
SUMIFS(sum_range, criteria_range1, criteria1, [criteria_range2, ...])

criteria_range1

For the first criteria, which range contains the data?

*Let us target the **Sales Rep** first, so select that column*

=SUMIFS(D15:D23, B15:B23,

| | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|---|---|---|---|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | | | | |
| 15 | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | | Answer: | | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$3,456 | | | =SUMIFS(D15:D23, B15:B23, | | | |
| 17 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | SUMIFS(sum_range, criteria_range1, criteria1, [criteria_range2, criteria2] ...) | | | |
| 18 | John | South | \$9,854 | 4 | | | | | |
| 19 | John | North | \$2,569 | 1 | | | | | |
| 20 | Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 | | | | | |
| 21 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | | | |
| 22 | John | South | \$1,458 | 4 | | | | | |
| 23 | John | North | \$2,562 | 1 | | | | | |

criteria1

What is your filtering criteria?

We want to filter for John, so type in "John"

=SUMIFS(D15:D23, B15:B23, "John",

| | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|---|--|---|---|---|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | | | | | |
| 15 | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | | Answer: | | | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$3,456 | | | =SUMIFS(D15:D23, B15:B23, "John", | | | | |
| 17 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | SUMIFS(sum_range, criteria_range1, criteria1, [criteria_range2, criteria2] [criteria_range3, ...]) | | | | |
| 18 | John | South | \$9,854 | 4 | | | | | | |
| 19 | John | North | \$2,569 | 1 | | | | | | |
| 20 | Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 | | | | | | |
| 21 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | | | | |
| 22 | John | South | \$1,458 | 4 | | | | | | |
| 23 | John | North | \$2,562 | 1 | | | | | | |

criteria_range2

For the second criteria, which range contains the data?

*Let us now target the **Region**, so select that column*

=SUMIFS(D15:D23, B15:B23, "John", C15:C23,

| | S | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|--|---|---|---|---|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | | | | | |
| 15 | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | Answer: | | | | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | | | =SUMIFS(D15:D23, B15:B23, "John", C15:C23, | | | | | |
| 17 | Kinga | North | \$2,568 | | <small>=SUMIFS(sum_range, criteria_range1, criteria1, [criteria_range2, criteria2], [criteria_range3, criteria3], ...)</small> | | | | | |
| 18 | John | South | \$9,854 | 4 | | | | | | |
| 19 | John | North | \$2,569 | 1 | | | | | | |
| 20 | Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 | | | | | | |
| 21 | Kinga | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | | | | |
| 22 | John | South | \$1,458 | 4 | | | | | | |
| 23 | John | North | \$2,567 | 1 | | | | | | |

criteria2

What is your filtering criteria?

We want to filter for the North Region, so type in "North"

=SUMIFS(D15:D23, B15:B23, "John", C15:C23, "North")

| | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J |
|----|------------------|---------------|--|------------|---|---------|---|---|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | | | | |
| 15 | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | | Answer: | | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | SUMIFS(D15:D23, B15:D23, "John", C15:C23, "North") | | | | | | |
| 17 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | | | |
| 18 | John | South | \$4,804 | 4 | | | | | |
| 19 | John | North | \$2,569 | 1 | | | | | |
| 20 | Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 | | | | | |
| 21 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | | | |
| 22 | John | South | \$1,458 | 4 | | | | | |
| 23 | John | North | \$2,567 | 1 | | | | | |
| 24 | | | | | | | | | |

Just like that, Excel has selectively found the values and summed them together!

| | D | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|---|---------|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | |
| 15 | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | | Answer: |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$3,450 | 2 | | \$7,031 |
| 17 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | |
| 18 | John | South | \$9,854 | 4 | | |
| 19 | John | North | \$2,569 | 1 | | |
| 20 | Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 | | |
| 21 | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | |
| 22 | John | South | \$1,458 | 4 | | |
| 23 | John | North | \$2,502 | 1 | | |

SUMPRODUCT

What does it do?

It returns the sum of the products of corresponding ranges or arrays

Formula breakdown:

=SUMPRODUCT(array1, [array2], [array3]...)

What it means:

=SUMPRODUCT(this array, with that array...)

Example:

=SUMPRODUCT(C14:C17,D14:D17)/SUM(C14:C17) = \$455

i.e. The average selling price

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

A quick way to calculate the weighted average of two lists of data is to use the **SUMPRODUCT** formula. A **weighted average** can be used to determine the average salary of employees, the average grade of an exam or the average selling price of a company's stock list, as can be seen below.

We want to get the average selling price of our total stock items. This is easily achievable with the **SUMPRODUCT** formula! We will use this to calculate the total value of the items, then **divide this by the total number of units** to get the **average selling price**.

STEP 1: We need to enter the **SUMPRODUCT** function in a blank cell:

=SUMPRODUCT(

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with the following data:

| Stock Items | Units Sold | Sale Price |
|-------------|------------|------------|
| Television | 24,500 | \$350 |
| Laptop | 16,700 | \$850 |
| Tablet | 7,500 | \$850 |
| Keyboard | 5,500 | \$150 |

Next to the table, there is a text box asking: "What is the AVERAGE SELLING PRICE of our total STOCK ITEMS!". Below the table, a formula bar shows the formula: **=SUMPRODUCT(**. A tooltip for the formula is also visible: **SUMPRODUCT(array1, array2, [array3], ...)**.

STEP 2: The **SUMPRODUCT** arguments:

array1

What is the first array that contains the data?

*We want to get the **Units Sold** so select those values.*

=SUMPRODUCT(C14:C17,

| | B | C | D | F | F | G | H | I |
|----|---|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|---|---|---|---|
| 13 | | array1 | array2 | | | | | |
| 13 | | Stock Items | Units Sold | Sale Price | | | | |
| 14 | | Television | 24,500 | \$350 | | Average Selling Price | | |
| 15 | | Laptop | 16,700 | \$650 | | =SUMPRODUCT(C14:C17, | | |
| 16 | | Tablet | 2,500 | \$850 | | SUMPRODUCT(array [array2], [array3], [array4], ...) | | |
| 17 | | Keyboard | 5,500 | \$150 | | | | |

array2

What is the second array that contains the data?

*We want to get the **Sale Price**, so select those values. The values will be multiplied against the first array that we got.*

=SUMPRODUCT(C14:C17, D14:D17)

| | B | C | D | F | F | G | H | I |
|----|---|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|---|-------------------------------|---|---|
| 13 | | array1 | array2 | | | | | |
| 13 | | Stock Items | Units Sold | Sale Price | | | | |
| 14 | | Television | 24,500 | \$350 | | Average Selling Price | | |
| 15 | | Laptop | 16,700 | \$650 | | =SUMPRODUCT(C14:C17, D14:D17) | | |
| 16 | | Tablet | 2,500 | \$850 | | | | |
| 17 | | Keyboard | 5,500 | \$150 | | | | |

STEP 3: Now we have the total value, we can easily get the average value by dividing it by the total number of items.

=SUMPRODUCT(C14:C17, D14:D17) / SUM(C14:C17)

| | F | G | H | I | J |
|----|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--|---|
| 12 | | array1 | array2 | | |
| 13 | Stock Items | Units Sold | Sale Price | | |
| 14 | Television | 24,500 | \$350 | <u>Average Selling Price</u> | |
| 15 | Laptop | 16,700 | | =SUMPRODUCT(C14:C17, D14:D17) / SUM(C14:C17) | |
| 16 | Tablet | 2,500 | \$850 | | |
| 17 | Keyboard | 5,500 | \$150 | | |
| 18 | | | | | |

With just this single formula, we are able to get the average selling price without the need of extra helper columns!

| | D | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|---|---|-----------------------|---|
| 12 | | array1 | array2 | | | | |
| 13 | Stock Items | Units Sold | Sale Price | | | | |
| 14 | Television | 24,500 | \$350 | | | Average Selling Price | |
| 15 | Laptop | 16,700 | \$650 | | | \$155 | |
| 16 | Tablet | 2,500 | \$850 | | | | |
| 17 | Keyboard | 5,500 | \$150 | | | | |

STATISTICAL FUNCTIONS

AVERAGE

What does it do?

Gives you the average of a group of values

Formula breakdown:

=AVERAGE(number1, number2...)

What it means:

=AVERAGE(the numbers you want to average)

Example:

=AVERAGE(1,2,3,4) =2.5

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

There are times when you have to get the average of your values in your Excel worksheet and you would normally have to **SUM** all of the values then divide it by the number of values.

That's the long process!

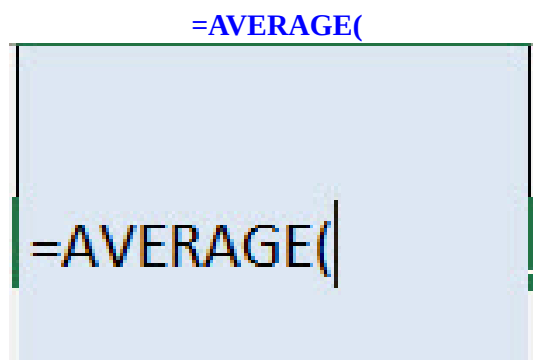
Thankfully there is a quicker way with Excel's **AVERAGE formula!**

In our example below, we have a table of values that we need to get the average from:

| DAY OF THE WEEK | SALES |
|-----------------|------------|
| Monday | \$829.41 |
| Tuesday | \$894.00 |
| Wednesday | \$332.11 |
| Thursday | \$1,023.32 |

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the AVERAGE function in a blank cell:**



STEP 2: The **AVERAGE** arguments:

text

What numbers do we want to get the average of?

Select the range of values:

`=AVERAGE(D9:D12)`

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------------------|--------------|---|------------------|---|
| 8 | DAY OF THE WEEK | SALES | | | |
| 9 | Monday | \$829.41 | | =AVERAGE(D9:D12) | |
| 10 | Tuesday | \$894.00 | | | |
| 11 | Wednesday | \$332.11 | | | |
| 12 | Thursday | \$1,023.32 | | | |

You have now calculated the average of the Sales numbers!

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|------------------------|--------------|---|----------------|
| 8 | DAY OF THE WEEK | SALES | | AVERAGE |
| 9 | Monday | \$829.41 | | \$769.71 |
| 10 | Tuesday | \$894.00 | | |
| 11 | Wednesday | \$332.11 | | |
| 12 | Thursday | \$1,023.32 | | |

LARGE

What does it do?

Get the nth largest value from a range of values

Formula breakdown:

=LARGE(array, k)

What it means:

=LARGE(range of values, position of the largest value)

Example:

=LARGE(C9:C12, 3) = 60

i.e. 60 is the 3rd largest value in the range {60;55;100;89}

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

You have a list of values and you want to get the third (or nth) largest value, no problem! Excel's **LARGE Formula** can easily get that for you!

STEP 1: We need to enter the *LARGE* function in a blank cell:

=LARGE(

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|---------|
| 8 | VALUES | | |
| 9 | 60 | | =LARGE(|
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |

LARGE(array, k)

STEP 2: The **LARGE** arguments:

array

What is the range of values?

Select the cells containing your values:

=LARGE(C9:C12,

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|-------------------------------------|
| 8 | VALUES | | =LARGE(C9:C12, LARGE(array, k) |
| 9 | 60 | | |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |
| 13 | | | |

k

What is the nth largest value that you want to get?

We want to get the third largest value so we will place in 3.

=LARGE(C9:C12, 3)

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|-------------------|
| 8 | VALUES | | =LARGE(C9:C12, 3) |
| 9 | 60 | | |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |
| 13 | | | |

You now have your third largest value!

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------------|---|------------------------------|
| 8 | VALUES | | 3RD LARGEST VALUE |
| 9 | 60 | | 60 |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |
| 13 | | | |

MAX

What does it do?

Get the largest value from a range of values

Formula breakdown:

=MAX(number1, [number2], ...)

What it means:

=MAX(a number or range of values, [additional numbers], ...)

Example:

=MAX(60,55,100,89) = 100

i.e. 100 is the largest number in the range {60;55;100;89}

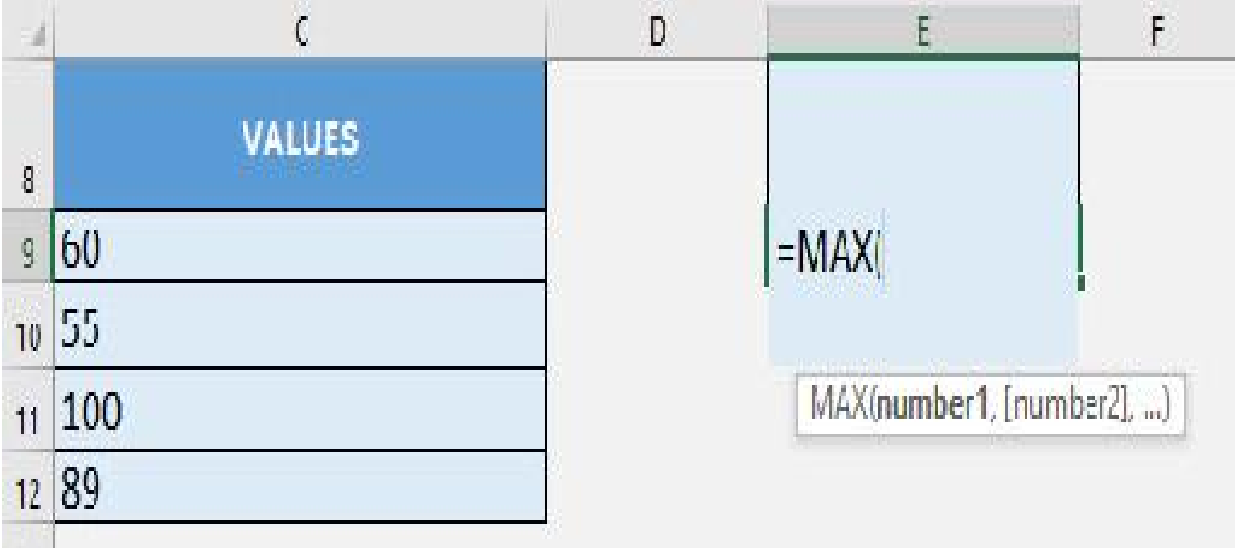
Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

If you want to get the largest value out of a list of values, just one use of Excel's **MAX Formula** gives you the answer instantly!

STEP 1: We need to enter the **MAX** function in a blank cell:

=MAX(



The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with the following data:

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|--------|---|-------|---|
| 8 | VALUES | | | |
| 9 | 60 | | =MAX(| |
| 10 | 55 | | | |
| 11 | 100 | | | |
| 12 | 89 | | | |

A tooltip for the MAX function is visible, showing the syntax: `MAX(number1, [number2], ...)`

STEP 2: The **MAX** arguments:

number1, [number2], ...

Where is the list of values?

Select the cells containing the values that you want to get the maximum value from.

=MAX(C9:C12)

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|--------------|
| 8 | VALUES | | |
| 9 | 60 | | =MAX(C9:C12) |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |
| 13 | | | |

You now have the maximum value of 100 from the list!

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|-----------|
| 8 | VALUES | | MAX VALUE |
| 9 | 60 | | 100 |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |
| 13 | | | |

MEDIAN

What does it do?

Gets the middle number in a set of numbers

Formula breakdown:

=MEDIAN(number1, [number2], ...)

What it means:

=MEDIAN(first number, [succeeding numbers in the set], ...)

Example:

=MEDIAN(60,55,100,89) = 74.50

i.e. 74.50 is the middle number $(60+89)/2$ in the range {60;55;100;89}

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

You have a list of values and you want to get the median or middle of those values. Excel's **MEDIAN Formula** can easily get that for you!

An important thing to note though, if it's an **odd number of values**, it will simply get the middle value. But if it's an **even number of values**, it will get the 2 middle values, then get their average!

STEP 1: We need to **enter the MEDIAN function in a blank cell:**

`=MEDIAN(`

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|--------|---|---|---|
| 8 | VALUES | | | |
| 9 | 60 | | <code>=MEDIAN(</code> <code>MEDIAN(number1, [number2], ...)</code> | |
| 10 | 55 | | | |
| 11 | 100 | | | |
| 12 | 89 | | | |

STEP 2: The **MEDIAN** arguments:

number1, [number2], ...

What is the range of values?

Select the cells containing your values:

`=MEDIAN(C9:C12)`

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|-----------------|
| 8 | VALUES | | |
| 9 | 60 | | =MEDIAN(C9:C12) |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |
| 13 | | | |

You now have your **median**! It is calculated as the average of the 2 middle values since we have an even number of values: $(60 + 89) / 2 = 74.50$

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|--------------|
| 8 | VALUES | | MIDDLE VALUE |
| 9 | 60 | | 74.50 |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |

MIN

What does it do?

Get the smallest value from a range of values

Formula breakdown:

=MIN(number1, [number2], ...)

What it means:

=MIN(a number or range of values, [additional numbers], ...)

Example:

=MIN(60,55,100,89) = 55

i.e. 55 is the smallest number in the range {60;55;100;89}

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

If you want to get the smallest value out of a list of values, just one use of Excel's **MIN Formula** gives you the answer instantly!

STEP 1: We need to **enter the MIN function in a blank cell:**

=MIN(

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|--------|---|-------|---|
| 8 | VALUES | | | |
| 9 | 60 | | =MIN(| |
| 10 | 55 | | | |
| 11 | 100 | | | |
| 12 | 89 | | | |

MIN(number1, [number2], ...)

STEP 2: The **MIN** arguments:

number1, [number2], ...

Where is the list of values?

Select the cells containing the values that you want to get the minimum value from.

=MIN(**C9:C12**)

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|--------------|
| 8 | VALUES | | |
| 9 | 60 | | =MIN(C9:C12) |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |

You now have the minimum value of 55 from the list!

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|-----------|
| 8 | VALUES | | MIN VALUE |
| 9 | 60 | | 55 |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |
| 13 | | | |

SMALL

What does it do?

Get the nth smallest value from a range of values

Formula breakdown:

=SMALL(array, k)

What it means:

=SMALL(range of values, position of the smallest value)

Example:

=SMALL(C9:C12, 3) = 89

i.e. 89 is the 3rd smallest value in the range {60;55;100;89}

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

You have a list of values and you want to get the third (or nth) smallest value, no problem! Excel's **SMALL Formula** can easily get that for you!

STEP 1: We need to **enter the SMALL function in a blank cell:**

=SMALL(

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|---------|
| 8 | VALUES | | |
| 9 | 60 | | =SMALL(|
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |

SMALL(array, k)

STEP 2: The **SMALL** arguments:

array

What is the range of values?

Select the cells containing your values:

=SMALL(C9:C12,

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------|---|---|
| 8 | VALUES | | <code>=SMALL(C9:C12, </code> <small>SMALL(array, k)</small> |
| 9 | 60 | | |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |

k

What is the nth smallest value that you want to get?

We want to get the third smallest value so we will place in 3.

`=SMALL(C9:C12, 3)`

| | C | D | F | F |
|----|--------|---|--------------------------------|---|
| 8 | VALUES | | <code>=SMALL(C9:C12, 3)</code> | |
| 9 | 60 | | | |
| 10 | 55 | | | |
| 11 | 100 | | | |
| 12 | 89 | | | |

You now have your third smallest value!

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------------|---|-------------------------------|
| 8 | VALUES | | 3RD SMALLEST VALUE |
| 9 | 60 | | 89 |
| 10 | 55 | | |
| 11 | 100 | | |
| 12 | 89 | | |
| 13 | | | |

TEXT FUNCTIONS

CLEAN

What does it do?

Removes all nonprintable characters from text

Formula breakdown:

=CLEAN(text)

What it means:

=CLEAN(this dirty text cell)

Example:

=CLEAN(23) =234

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

There are times when imported text from other applications contain characters that are unprintable. The **CLEAN** formula in Excel can clean up the unprintable characters easily.

STEP 1: We need to **enter the Clean function**

```
=CLEAN
```

STEP 2: The Clean argument:

Which text do we want to clean the dirty characters from?

This is our data source:

| IMPORTED VALUE | CLEANED VALUE |
|----------------|---------------|
| 254686988 | |
| 2546887 | |
| 24686988 | |
| 2546989 | |
| 25466990 | |

Reference the cell which has the dirty data:

```
=CLEAN(C9)
```


CONCATENATE

What does it do?

Joins two or more text strings into one string. The item can be a text value, number, or cell reference.

Formula breakdown:

=CONCATENATE(text1, [text2], [text3], ...)

What it means:

=CONCATENATE(the first text, the second text, and so on...)

Example:

=CONCATENATE("Hello", " ", "World") = "Hello World"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Excel's **CONCATENATE** functions joins two or more text strings into one string. The item can be a text value, number, or cell reference.

If you add a double quotation with a space in between " " then this will add a space between the texts selected on either side.

You can also add a line break in between each text string. This is done by entering the **CHAR(10)** function in between each text string/argument. You will then need to select WRAP TEXT in order to see each text on a separate line.

See how easy this is to implement this by using employee data on the example below.

STEP 1: We need to enter the **CONCATENATE** function in a blank cell:

=CONCATENATE(

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|----------------------|--------------|------------|-----------------|---------------|
| | SALES REPRESENTATIVE | EMAIL | DEPARTMENT | PHONE EXTENSION | CONCATENATE |
| 11 | | | | | |
| 12 | Harner Simpson | hs@email.com | MARKETING | 3156 | =CONCATENATE(|
| 13 | Ian Wright | iw@email.com | SALES | 2166 | |
| 14 | John Michaeloudis | jm@email.com | FINANCE | 2612 | |
| 15 | Michael Jackson | mj@email.com | SHIPPING | 3155 | |
| 16 | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | |
| 18 | | | | | |
| 19 | | | | | |

STEP 2: The **CONCATENATE** arguments:

text1, [text2], [text3], ...

Which text do you want to join together?

Let us select all the columns:

=CONCATENATE(A12, B12, C12, D12)

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|----------------------|---------------|------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| | SALES REPRESENTATIVE | EMAIL | DEPARTMENT | PHONE EXTENSION | CONCATENATE |
| 11 | | | | | |
| 12 | Homer Simpson | hsj@email.com | MARKETING | 3456 | =CONCATENATE(A12,B12,C12,D12) |
| 13 | Ian Wright | iw@email.com | SALES | 2566 | |
| 14 | John Michaeloudis | jm@email.com | FINANCE | 2642 | |
| 15 | Michael Jackson | mj@email.com | SHIPPING | 3455 | |
| 16 | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | |
| 18 | | | | | |

Now let's add the function CHAR(10) to add a line break between each text

=CONCATENATE(A12, CHAR(10), B12, CHAR(10), C12, CHAR(10), D12)

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|----------------------|---------------|------------|--|-------------|
| | SALES REPRESENTATIVE | EMAIL | DEPARTMENT | PHONE EXTENSION | CONCATENATE |
| 11 | | | | | |
| 12 | Homer Simpson | hsj@email.com | MARKETING | =CONCATENATE(A12, CHAR(10), B12, CHAR(10), C12, CHAR(10), D12) | |
| 13 | Ian Wright | iw@email.com | SALES | 2566 | |
| 14 | John Michaeloudis | jm@email.com | FINANCE | 2642 | |
| 15 | Michael Jackson | mj@email.com | SHIPPING | 3455 | |
| 16 | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | |
| 18 | | | | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|----------------------|--------------|------------|-----------------|---|
| 11 | SALES REPRESENTATIVE | EMAIL | DEPARTMENT | PHONE EXTENSION | CONCATENATE |
| 12 | Homer Simpson | hs@email.com | MARKETING | 3456 | Homer Simpsonhs@email.comMARKETING3456 |
| 13 | Ian Wright | iw@email.com | SALES | 2566 | Ian Wrightiw@email.comSALES2566 |
| 14 | John Michaloudis | jm@email.com | FINANCE | 7147 | John Michaloudisjm@email.comFINANCE7147 |
| 15 | Michael Jackson | mj@email.com | SHIPPING | 3155 | Michael Jacksonmj@email.comSHIPPING3155 |
| 16 | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | |
| 18 | | | | | |
| 19 | | | | | |

STEP 3: Go to *Home > Alignment > Wrap Text* to show the text in multiple lines and you now have all of results!

Excel ribbon: Home > Font > Paragraph > Merge & Center

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|----------------------|--------------|------------|-----------------|--|
| 11 | SALES REPRESENTATIVE | EMAIL | DEPARTMENT | PHONE EXTENSION | CONCATENATE |
| 12 | Homer Simpson | hs@email.com | MARKETING | 3456 | Homer Simpson hs@email.com MARKETING 3456 |
| 13 | Ian Wright | iw@email.com | SALES | 2345 | Ian Wright iw@email.com SALES 2345 |
| 14 | John Michaeloudis | jm@email.com | FINANCE | 2642 | John Michaeloudis jm@email.com FINANCE 2642 |
| 15 | Michael Jackson | mj@email.com | SHIPPING | 3155 | Michael Jackson mj@email.com SHIPPING 3155 |

EXACT

What does it do?

Compares two texts, in a case-sensitive manner, to see if they are the same

Formula breakdown:

=EXACT(text1, text2)

What it means:

=EXACT(first text to be compared, second text to be compared)

Example:

=EXACT("EXCEL", "ExCEL") =FALSE

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

We can easily compare two texts if they are equal or not with the **EXACT formula**.

But I can hear you say now, hold on, I can easily do that with the equal (sign) operator! The difference is, equal compares text and does not consider case sensitivity. However the **EXACT formula** compares text in a **case-sensitive manner**.

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the *EXACT* function in a blank cell:

`=EXACT(`

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------|---------|----------------------|
| 8 | TEXT #1 | TEXT #2 | |
| 9 | Excel | Excel | =EXACT(|
| 10 | EXCEL | ExCEL | |
| 11 | excel | excel | EXACT (text1, text2) |
| 12 | Excel | excel | |

STEP 2: The **EXACT** arguments:

text1

What is the first text to be compared?

Select the cell containing leftmost text that you want to compare:

`=EXACT(C9,`

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------|---------|------------------------|
| 8 | TEXT #1 | TEXT #2 | |
| 9 | Excel | Excel | =EXACT(C9, |
| 10 | EXCEL | ExCEL | |
| 11 | excel | excel | EXACT('excel', text2') |
| 12 | Excel | excel | |

text2

What is the second text to be compared?

Select the cell containing rightmost text that you want to compare:

=EXACT(C9, D9)

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------|---------|----------------|
| 8 | TEXT #1 | TEXT #2 | |
| 9 | Excel | Excel | =EXACT(C9, D9) |
| 10 | EXCEL | ExCEL | |
| 11 | excel | excel | |
| 12 | Excel | excel | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

You can see that the Excel values that have different capital letters have a **FALSE** result! (e.g. EXCEL vs. ExCEL)

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------|---------|--------------------|
| 8 | TEXT #1 | TEXT #2 | ARE THEY THE SAME? |
| 9 | Excel | Excel | TRUE |
| 10 | EXCEL | EXCEL | FALSE |
| 11 | excel | excel | TRUE |
| 12 | Excel | excel | FALSE |
| 13 | | | |

FIND

What does it do?

Gets the position of a specific text within another text

Formula breakdown:

=FIND(*find_text*, *within_text*, [*start_num*])

What it means:

=FIND(*text to be searched*, *the source text*, [*starting position of the source text*])

Example:

=FIND("x", "Excel", 1) = 2

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

If you want to check where a specific text is located in the source text, it is very easy to search for the position using the **FIND Formula!**

You need to take note that the **FIND Formula** is **case-sensitive** when searching for your text! And it always matches the **first occurrence**. We will see in our examples below!

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the FIND function in a blank cell:**

=FIND(

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|-----------------------|-------|---|---|---|
| 8 | SOURCE TEXT | | | | |
| 9 | Excel | x | =FIND(| | |
| 10 | Excel with excel 2019 | excel | | | |
| 11 | How are you? | o | FIND(find_text, within_text, [start_num]) | | |
| 12 | Can you find this? | excel | | | |

STEP 2: The **FIND** arguments:

find_text

What is the text to be searched for?

Select the cell containing the text to be searched for. In our first example, we want to search for 'x' in the word 'Excel':

=FIND(D9,

| | L | U | E | F | G |
|----|-----------------------|-------------|-----------|---|---|
| 8 | SOURCE TEXT | SEARCH TEXT | | | |
| 9 | Excel | x | =FIND(D9, | | |
| 10 | Excel with excel 2019 | excel | | | |
| 11 | How are you? | o | | | FIND(find_text, within_text, [start_num]) |
| 12 | Can you find this? | excel | | | |

within_text

What is your source text?

Select the cell source text. So let's select 'Excel' as our source text:

=FIND(D9, C9,

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|-----------------------|-------------|--------------|---|---|
| 8 | SOURCE TEXT | SEARCH TEXT | | | |
| 9 | Excel | x | =FIND(D9,C9, | | |
| 10 | Excel with excel 2019 | excel | | | |
| 11 | How are you? | o | | | FIND(find_text, within_text, [start_num]) |
| 12 | Can you find this? | excel | | | |

start_num

Where do you want to start searching in your source text?

You can leave this blank, it will default to 1 which means it will start looking from the first character of your source text. In our case, let us put in 1 to start searching from there:

=FIND(D9, C9, 1)

| | C | D | E |
|----|-----------------------|-------------|----------------|
| 8 | SOURCE TEXT | SEARCH TEXT | |
| 9 | Excel | x | =FIND(D9,C9,1) |
| 10 | Excel with excel 2019 | excel | |
| 11 | How are you? | o | |
| 12 | Can you find this? | excel | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | E |
|----|-----------------------|-------------|----------|
| 8 | SOURCE TEXT | SEARCH TEXT | POSITION |
| 9 | Excel | x | 2 |
| 10 | Excel with excel 2019 | excel | |
| 11 | How are you? | o | |
| 12 | Can you find this? | excel | |
| 13 | | | |

You can see that the matching is **case sensitive!** And if it's unable to find your text, it will return **#VALUE.**

| | C | D | E |
|----|-----------------------|-------------|----------|
| 0 | SOURCE TEXT | SEARCH TEXT | POSITION |
| 9 | Fxcel | x | 2 |
| 10 | Exuel with excel 2019 | excel | 12 |
| 11 | How are you? | o | 2 |
| 12 | Can you find this? | excel | #VALUE! |
| 13 | | | |
| 14 | | | |

LEFT

What does it do?

It returns the first character or characters in a text string, based on the number of characters you specify.

Formula breakdown:

=LEFT(text, [num_chars])

What it means:

=LEFT(look in this cell, extract X characters)

Example:

=LEFT("19281013-2",8) = 19281013

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

There are times when you will need to extract the first few characters of text within a cell, e.g. From a serial number, part number, name, phone number etc.

The **LEFT** formula in Excel can help you parse and extract the needed text easily.

In our example below, we have a Part # which has 10 characters and we want to extract all the characters before the hyphen "-".

STEP 1: We need to **enter the LEFT function** next to the cell that we want to extract the data from:

`=LEFT(`

STEP 2: The **LEFT** arguments:

text

Which text do we want to extract the first X characters from?

Reference the cell that contains the text or value:

`=LEFT(C9`

| | C | D |
|----|------------|-------------------------|
| 8 | PART # | NEW PART # |
| 9 | 19281013-2 | =LEFT(C9 |
| 10 | 20767748-5 | LEFT(text, [num_chars]) |
| 11 | 46612687-k | |
| 12 | 10017191-0 | |
| 13 | 34793800-9 | |
| 14 | 46677751-k | |

[num_chars]

How many characters do we want to extract from cell C9?

Enter a positive number only:

=LEFT(C9, 8)

| | C | D |
|----|------------|-------------|
| 8 | PART # | NEW PART # |
| 9 | 19281013-2 | =LEFT(C9,8) |
| 10 | 20767748-5 | |
| 11 | 46612687-k | |
| 12 | 10017191-0 | |
| 13 | 34793800-9 | |
| 14 | 46677751-k | |

STEP 3: Do the same for the rest of the cells by dragging the **LEFT** formula all the way down using the left mouse button.

Notice all of the first 8 characters in each text are now extracted:

| PART # | NEW PART # |
|------------|------------|
| 19281013-2 | 19281013 |
| 20767748-5 | 20767748 |
| 46612687-k | 46612687 |
| 10017191-0 | 10017191 |
| 34793800-9 | 34793800 |
| 46677751-k | 46677751 |

LEN

What does it do?

Gives you the number of characters in a text string

Formula breakdown:

=LEN(text)

What it means:

=LEN(text that you want to get the number of characters from)

Example:

=LEN("John Michaloudis") =16

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

There are times when you need to get the number of characters within a cell in Excel. Thankfully this is very easy to do with Excel's **LEN (Length) formula!**

You can use the LEN function in Excel to **count all characters** in a cell, including letters, numbers, special characters, and all spaces.

The LEN function can be used as a data cleansing technique to find leading or trailing spaces or can be nested with other [TEXT functions](#).

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the LEN function** next to the cell that we want to get the number of characters from:

| | C | D |
|----|------------------|-----------|
| 8 | TEXT | |
| 9 | Talon Ferguson | =LEN(|
| 10 | Doris Velez | |
| 11 | John Michaloudis | LEN(text) |
| 12 | Cain Sawyer | |

STEP 2: The **LEN** arguments:

text

Which text do we want to get the number of characters from?

Reference the cell that contains the text string:

=LEN(C9)

| | C | D |
|----|------------------|----------|
| 8 | TEXT | |
| 9 | Talon Ferguson | =LEN(C9) |
| 10 | Doris Velez | |
| 11 | John Michaloudis | |
| 12 | Cain Sawyer | |

STEP 3: Do the same for the rest of the cells by dragging the **LEN** formula all the way down using the left mouse button.

Note that you are able to get the number of characters for each name. My name has 16 characters (including the space)!

| | C | D |
|----|------------------|----------------------|
| 8 | TEXT | NUMBER OF CHARACTERS |
| 9 | Talon Ferguson | 14 |
| 10 | Doris Velez | 11 |
| 11 | John Michaloudis | 16 |
| 12 | Cain Sawyer | 11 |
| 13 | | |

LOWER

What does it do?

Converts all characters in the text string into lowercase

Formula breakdown:

=LOWER(text)

What it means:

=LOWER(text to be converted to lower case)

Example:

=LOWER("EXCEL ROCKS!") = "excel rocks!"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

We can easily change text into a lower case using the **LOWER formula** in Excel. It does not convert symbols and numbers though, which we will see in the examples.

If you want to get rid of uneven capitalization throughout the text, then this formula is perfect for you!

STEP 1: We need to enter the *LOWER* function in a blank cell:

`=LOWER(`

| | C | D |
|----|-----------------|-------------|
| 8 | TEXT | |
| 9 | Excel Rocks! | =LOWER(|
| 10 | EXCEL ROCKS! | |
| 11 | excel rocks! | LOWER(text) |
| 12 | Excel ROCKS 123 | |

STEP 2: The **LOWER** arguments:

text

What is the text to be converted to lower case?


Select the cell containing the text that you want to convert:

`=LOWER(C9)`

| | C | D |
|----|-----------------|------------|
| 8 | TEXT | |
| 9 | Excel Rocks! | =LOWER(C9) |
| 10 | EXCEL ROCKS! | |
| 11 | excel rocks! | |
| 12 | Excel ROCKS 123 | |


Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|-----------------|--------------|
| 8 | TEXT | RESULT |
| 9 | Excel Rocks! | excel rocks! |
| 10 | EXCEL ROCKS! | |
| 11 | excel rocks! | |
| 12 | Excel ROCKS 123 | |
| 13 | | |



You can see that the values are all now in lower case!

| | C | D |
|----|-----------------|-----------------|
| 8 | TEXT | RESULT |
| 9 | Excel Rocks! | excel rocks! |
| 10 | EXCEL ROCKS! | excel rocks! |
| 11 | excel rocks! | excel rocks! |
| 12 | Excel ROCKS 123 | excel rocks 123 |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |



MID

What does it do?

Extracts a specific number of characters from the middle of a text

Formula breakdown:

=MID(text, start_num, num_chars)

What it means:

=MID(source text, starting position to extract text, number of characters to extract)

Example:

=MID("How are you?", 5, 3) ="are"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Ever wanted to get something in the middle of your text? And you're doing it by hand? It is very easy to do this in Excel with the **MID Formula!**

It allows you to extract any number of characters from the middle of your text!

STEP 1: We need to **enter the MID function in a blank cell:**

=MID(

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|--------------|----------------|----------------------|------|---|---|
| 8 | SOURCE TEXT | START POSITION | NUMBER OF CHARACTERS | | | |
| 9 | How are you? | 1 | 3 | MID(| | |
| 10 | How are you? | 5 | 3 | | | |
| 11 | How are you? | 9 | 3 | | | |

MID(text, start_num, num_chars)

STEP 2: The **MID** arguments:

text

What is the source text?

Select the cell containing the source text that you want to extract from:

=MID(C9,

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|--------------|----------------|----------------------|----------|---|---|
| 8 | SOURCE TEXT | START POSITION | NUMBER OF CHARACTERS | | | |
| 9 | How are you? | 1 | 3 | =MID(C9, | | |
| 10 | How are you? | 5 | 3 | | | |
| 11 | How are you? | 9 | 3 | | | |
| 12 | | | | | | |

MID(text, start_num, num_chars)

start_num

What position will we start extracting the text from?

Select the cell containing our starting position. This is where the MID formula will start extracting the text from:

`=MID(C9, D9,`

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|--------------|----------------|----------------------|-------------|---|---|
| | SOURCE TEXT | START POSITION | NUMBER OF CHARACTERS | | | |
| 8 | | | | | | |
| 9 | How are you? | 1 | 3 | =MID(C9,D9, | | |
| 10 | How are you? | 5 | 3 | | | |
| 11 | How are you? | 9 | 3 | | | |

MID(text, start_num, num_chars)

num_chars

How many characters do we want to extract?


Select the cell containing the number of characters. In our case, we want to extract 3 characters:

`=MID(C9, D9, E9)`

| | C | D | E | F | G | |
|----|--------------|----------------|----------------------|------------------|---|--|
| | SOURCE TEXT | START POSITION | NUMBER OF CHARACTERS | | | |
| 8 | | | | | | |
| 9 | How are you? | 1 | 3 | =MID(C9, D9, E9) | | |
| 10 | How are you? | 5 | 3 | | | |
| 11 | How are you? | 9 | 3 | | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | F | F |
|----|--------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|
| | SOURCE TEXT | START POSITION | NUMBER OF CHARACTERS | EXTRACTED TEXT |
| 9 | How are you? | 1 | 3 | How |
| 10 | How are you? | 5 | 3 | |
| 11 | How are you? | 9 | 3 | |



You now have your extracted text! In our scenario, we tried to extract the different words in the phrase "How are you?"

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|--------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|---|
| | SOURCE TEXT | START POSITION | NUMBER OF CHARACTERS | EXTRACTED TEXT | |
| 9 | How are you? | 1 | 3 | How | |
| 10 | How are you? | 5 | 3 | are | |
| 11 | How are you? | 9 | 3 | you | |

PROPER

What does it do?

Capitalizes the first letter in a text string and any other letters in the text that follow a space. Converts all other letters to lowercase letters.

Formula breakdown:

=PROPER([text](#))

What it means:

=PROPER([this text cell](#))

Example:

=PROPER("STUART POWELL") ="Stuart Powell"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

There are times when you will need to only CAPITALIZE the first letter in each word. The most common scenario would be when you receive data with employee names, countries or cities that are all in lower or uppercase.

The **PROPER** formula in Excel can help you format the text very very easily...goodbye manual adjustments!

In our example below, we have a list of names in capital letters. However we want to show the capital letters only on the first letter of each word.

STEP 1: We need to **enter the PROPER function** next to the cell that we want to clean the data from:

=PROPER

STEP 2: The **PROPER** arguments:

text

Which text do we want to change?

Reference the cell that contains the text string:

=PROPER(C10)

| | C | D |
|----|-------------------|--------------|
| 9 | FULL NAME | |
| 10 | STUART POWELL | =PROPER(C10) |
| 11 | GARY O'MALEY | |
| 12 | COLLEEN VALENTINE | |
| 13 | QUINLAN MERRILL | |
| 14 | JEREMY RUIZ | |
| 15 | YOSHIO PAUL | |

STEP 3: Do the same for the rest of the cells by dragging the **PROPER** formula all the way down using the left mouse button.

Note that all of the names are now properly formatted:

| | C | D |
|----|-------------------|-------------------|
| 9 | FULL NAME | PROPER NAME |
| 10 | STUART POWELL | Stuart Powell |
| 11 | GARY O'MALEY | Gary O'Maley |
| 12 | COLLEEN VALENTINE | Colleen Valentine |
| 13 | QUINLAN MERRILL | Quinlan Merrill |
| 14 | JEREMY RUIZ | Jeremy Ruiz |
| 15 | YOSHIO PAUL | Yoshio Paul |

REPLACE

What does it do?

Replaces part of a text string (based on the number of characters you specify) with a different text string

Formula breakdown:

=REPLACE(old_text, start_num, num_chars, new_text)

What it means:

=REPLACE(this cell, starting from this number, all the way to this number, with this new text)

Example:

=REPLACE("+1-817-0000000", 1, FIND("-", "+1-817-0000000"), "")

="817-0000000"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)


Once I was given a list of phone numbers in their international format. But for my needs, I did not want to include the country code and I just wanted the phone number.

I was looking for a quick way to remove the country code.

I discovered a cool way to do this using the **REPLACE** formula! Goodbye to manual adjustments!

STEP 1: We need to **enter the Replace function** next to the cell that we want to clean the data from:

=REPLACE

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------------------|--|---|---|
| 9 | PHONE NUMBER | | | |
| 10 | 1 817 0000000 | =REPLACE | | |
| 11 | +1-817-1111111 | | | |
| 12 | +1-817-2222222 |  | | |
| 13 | +1-817-3333333 | | | |
| 14 | 1 817 4444444 | | | |
| 15 | +1-817-5555555 | | | |

STEP 2: The Replace arguments:

old_text

Which text do we want to change?

Reference the cell that contains the text string:

=REPLACE(C10,

| | C | D | E |
|----|----------------|---|---|
| 9 | PHONE NUMBER | | |
| 10 | +1-817-0000000 | =REPLACE(C10, | |
| 11 | +1 817 1111111 | | |
| 12 | +1-817-2222222 | REPLACE(old text, start num, num chars, new text) | |
| 13 | +1-817-3333333 | | |
| 14 | +1-817-4444444 | | |
| 15 | +1-817-5555555 | | |

start_num

Which character do we want to start the replacement from?

We want to remove the country code, so it starts from the first character.

=REPLACE(C10, 1,

| | C | D | F |
|----|----------------|---|---|
| 9 | PHONE NUMBER | | |
| 10 | +1-817-0000000 | =REPLACE(C10, 1, | |
| 11 | +1-817-1111111 | | |
| 12 | +1-817-2222222 | REPLACE(old_text, start_num, num_chars, new_text) | |
| 13 | +1-817-3333333 | | |
| 14 | +1-817-4444444 | | |
| 15 | +1-817-5555555 | | |

num_chars

How many characters do we want to replace?

We want to remove all characters up to and including the first hyphen.

We will use the **FIND** formula.

FIND("-", C10) will get the location of the first hyphen i.e. The 3rd place

=REPLACE(C10, 1, FIND("-", C10),

| | C | D | E |
|----|----------------|---|---|
| 9 | PHONE NUMBER | | |
| 10 | +1-817-0000000 | =REPLACE(C10, 1, FIND("-",C10), | |
| 11 | +1-817-1111111 | | |
| 12 | +1-817-2222222 | REPLACE(old_text, start_num, num_chars, new_text) | |
| 13 | +1-817-3333333 | | |
| 14 | +1-817-4444444 | | |
| 15 | +1-817-5555555 | | |

new_text

What text will serve as the replacement?

Since we want to remove this, you guessed it! We want the value to be an empty string which is depicted by the double quotations.

`=REPLACE(C10, 1, FIND("-", C10), " ")`

| | C | D | E |
|----|----------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 9 | PHONE NUMBER | | |
| 10 | +1-817-0000000 | =REPLACE(C10, 1, FIND("-",C10), "") | |
| 11 | +1-817-1111111 | | |
| 12 | +1-817-2222222 | | |
| 13 | +1-817-3333333 | | |
| 14 | +1-817-4444444 | | |
| 15 | +1-817-5555555 | | |

STEP 3: Do the same for the rest of the cells by dragging the **REPLACE** formula all the way down using the left mouse button.

Note that all of the phone numbers are now clean:

| | C | D |
|----|----------------|------------------|
| 9 | PHONE NUMBER | NEW PHONE NUMBER |
| 10 | +1-817-0000000 | 817-0000000 |
| 11 | +1-817-1111111 | 817-1111111 |
| 12 | +1-817-2222222 | 817-2222222 |
| 13 | +1-817-3333333 | 817-3333333 |
| 14 | +1-817-4444444 | 817-4444444 |
| 15 | +1-817-5555555 | 817-5555555 |
| 16 | | |

RIGHT

What does it do?

It returns the last character or characters in a text string, based on the number of characters you specify.

Formula breakdown:

=RIGHT(text, [num_chars])

What it means:

=RIGHT(look in this cell, extract X characters)

Example:

=RIGHT("6018 Libero St. 38390", 5) ="38390"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

There are times when you will need to extract the last few characters of text within a cell, e.g. From a serial number, part number, name, address etc.

The **RIGHT** formula in Excel can help you parse and extract the needed text easily.

In our example below, we have an address which has a zip code at the end (the zip code is fixed at 5 characters long) and we want to extract all of the zip codes in our address list.

STEP 1: We need to **enter the RIGHT function** next to the cell that we want to extract the data from:

`=RIGHT`

STEP 2: The Right arguments:

text

Which text do we want to extract the last X characters from?

Reference the cell that contains the text or value:

`=RIGHT(C9`

| | C | D |
|----|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 8 | ADDRESS | |
| 9 | 6018 Libero St. 38390 | =RIGHT(C9 |
| 10 | 464-8780 Mi. Ave 31437 | |
| 11 | 935 Sem Rd. 85006 | RIGHT(text, [num_chars]) |
| 12 | 1361 Erat Rd, 34609 | |
| 13 | 470 Donec Avenue 80089 | |
| 14 | 378-32 Sup St. 89028 | |

[num_chars]

How many characters from the right do we want to extract from cell C9?

Enter a positive number only:

=RIGHT(C9, 5)

| | C | D |
|----|------------------------|---------------|
| 8 | ADDRESS | |
| 9 | 6018 Libero St. 38390 | =RIGHT(C9, 5) |
| 10 | 464-8780 Mi. Ave 31437 | |
| 11 | 935 Sem Rd. 85006 | |
| 12 | 1361 Erat Rd, 34609 | |
| 13 | 470 Donec Avenue 80089 | |
| 14 | 378-32 Sup St. 89028 | |

STEP 3: Do the same for the rest of the cells by dragging the **RIGHT** formula all the way down using the left mouse button.

Notice all of the last 5 characters in each text are now extracted:

| | C | D |
|----|------------------------|----------|
| 8 | ADDRESS | ZIP CODE |
| 9 | 6018 Libero St. 38390 | 38390 |
| 10 | 464-8780 Mi. Ave 31437 | 31437 |
| 11 | 935 Sem Rd. 85006 | 85006 |
| 12 | 1361 Erat Rd, 34609 | 34609 |
| 13 | 470 Donec Avenue 80089 | 80089 |
| 14 | 378-32 Sup St. 89028 | 89028 |

SEARCH

What does it do?

Gets the position of a specific text within another text and allows wildcards
* ?

Formula breakdown:

=SEARCH(find_text, within_text, [start_num])

What it means:

=SEARCH(text to be searched, the source text, [starting position of the source text])

Example:

=SEARCH("excel", "Excel with excel 2019", 1) =1

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

If you want to check where a specific text is located in the source text, it is very easy to search for the position using the **SEARCH Formula!**

You might be wondering on what makes it different from the [FIND Formula](#). The **SEARCH formula** is **case-insensitive** when searching for text, and it also allows for the use of **wildcard characters like * and ?**

It is very cool when **wildcard characters** are used. The **? character** represents any single character, while ***** represents any number of characters.

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the SEARCH function in a blank cell:**

=SEARCH(

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|-----------------------|-------------|---|---|---|
| 8 | SOURCE TEXT | SEARCH TEXT | | | |
| 9 | Excel | x | =SEARCH(| | |
| 10 | Excel with excel 2019 | excel | | | |
| 11 | How are you? | H?w | SEARCH(find text, within text, 'start num') | | |
| 12 | Can you find this? | f* | | | |

STEP 2: The **SEARCH** arguments:

find_text

What is the text to be searched for?

There are a couple of flexible settings you can do in *find_text*:

- **? matches any single character** while *** matches any number of characters.**
- For example, if we place in **H?w**, then we want to search for any 3-character text that starts with H and ends with w

- If we change it to **H*w**, then we want to search for any text that starts with H and ends with w
- If ever you want to match the question mark (?) or asterisk character (*) **literally**, you will have to add a **tilde character (~)** before the character. For example, ~? and ~*

Select the cell containing the text to be searched for. In our first example, we want to search for 'x' in the word 'Excel':

=SEARCH(D9,

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|-----------------------|-------------|-------------|---|---|
| 8 | SOURCE TEXT | SEARCH TEXT | | | |
| 9 | Excel | x | =SEARCH(D9, | | |
| 10 | Excel with excel 2019 | excel | | | |
| 11 | How are you? | H?w | | SEARCH(find_text, within_text, [start_num]) | |
| 12 | Can you find this? | f* | | | |

within_text

What is your source text?

Select the cell source text. So let's select 'Excel' as our source text:

=SEARCH(D9, C9,

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|-----------------------|-------------|-----------------|---|---|
| 8 | SOURCE TEXT | SEARCH TEXT | | | |
| 9 | Excel | x | =SEARCH(D9, C9, | | |
| 10 | Excel with excel 2019 | excel | | | |
| 11 | How are you? | H?w | | SEARCH(find_text, within_text, [start_num]) | |
| 12 | Can you find this? | f* | | | |

start_num

Where do you want to start searching in your source text?


You can leave this blank, it will default to 1 which means it will start looking from the first character of your source text. In our case, let us put in 1 to start searching from there:

`=SEARCH(D9, C9, 1)`

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|-----------------------|-------------|--------------------|---|
| 8 | SOURCE TEXT | SEARCH TEXT | | |
| 9 | Excel | x | =SEARCH(D9, C9, 1) | |
| 10 | Excel with excel 2019 | excel | | |
| 11 | How are you? | H?w | | |
| 12 | Can you find this? | f* | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | E |
|----|-----------------------|-------------|----------|
| 8 | SOURCE TEXT | SEARCH TEXT | POSITION |
| 9 | Excel | x | 7 |
| 10 | Excel with excel 2019 | excel | |
| 11 | How are you? | H?w | |
| 12 | Can you find this? | f* | |



You can see that the matching is **case insensitive**! And you can see our **wildcard characters** matching in action!

| | C | D | E |
|----|-----------------------|-------------|----------|
| | SOURCE TEXT | SEARCH TEXT | POSITION |
| 8 | | | |
| 9 | Fxcel | x | 2 |
| 10 | Excel with excel 2019 | excel | 1 |
| 11 | How are you? | H?w | 1 |
| 12 | Can you find this? | f* | 9 |
| 13 | | | |
| 14 | | | |
| 15 | | | |

SUBSTITUTE

What does it do?

Substitutes *new text* for *old text* in a text string.

Formula breakdown:

=SUBSTITUTE(text, old_text, new_text, [instance num])

What it means:

=SUBSTITUTE(In this cell, Substitute this text, With this new text, [In the 1st, 2nd...instance it occurs])

Example:

=SUBSTITUTE("C97-27-JT", "-", "#", 2) ="C97-27#JT"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

When you needed to substitute a specific text in each word, and there is a pattern, Excel has just the formula for you.

The **SUBSTITUTE** formula in Excel can help you replace one specific text with another easily.

In our example below, we have a list of part numbers.

We want to replace the second dash - with the number sign # . This formula is able to do this for us.

STEP 1: We need to **enter the Substitute function** next to the cell that we want to clean the data from:

`=SUBSTITUTE`

| | C | D |
|----|---------------|-------------|
| 8 | PART # | |
| 9 | C97-27-JT | =SUBSTITUTE |
| 10 | T28-24-FG | |
| 11 | F34-68-LJ | |
| 12 | S63-86-LL | |
| 13 | P73-57-UB | |
| 14 | H26-82-HH | |

STEP 2: The Substitute arguments:

text

Which text do we want to change?

Reference the cell that contains the text or value:

`=SUBSTITUTE(C9,`

| | C | D | E |
|----|-----------|--|---|
| 0 | PART # | | |
| 9 | C97-27-JT | =SUBSTITUTE(C9 | |
| 10 | T28-24-FG | | |
| 11 | F34-68-LJ | SUBSTITUTE(text, old_text, new_text, [instance_num]) | |
| 12 | S63-86-LL | | |
| 13 | P73-57-UB | | |
| 14 | H26-82-HH | | |

old_text

Which text / characters do we want to replace?

We want to replace the dash - so type it in with double quotations:

=SUBSTITUTE(C9, "-",

| | C | D | E |
|----|-----------|--|---|
| 8 | PART # | | |
| 9 | C97 27 JT | =SUBSTITUTE(C9, " ", | |
| 10 | T28-24-FG | | |
| 11 | F34-68-LJ | SUBSTITUTE(text, old_text, new_text, [instance_num]) | |
| 12 | S63-86-LL | | |
| 13 | P73-57-UB | | |
| 14 | H26-82-HH | | |

new_text

Which text / characters do we want to replace it with?

We want to replace it with the number sign # so type it in with double quotations:

`=SUBSTITUTE(C9, "-", "#",`

| | C | D | E |
|----|-----------|--|---|
| 8 | PART # | | |
| 9 | C97-27-JT | =SUBSTITUTE(C9, "-", "#", | |
| 10 | T28-24-FG | | |
| 11 | F34-68-LJ | SUBSTITUTE(text, old_text, new_text, [instance_num]) | |
| 12 | S63-86-LL | | |
| 13 | P73-57-UB | | |
| 14 | H26-82-HH | | |

[instance num]

Which specific instance are we targeting the substitution on?

This parameter is optional. In our scenario, we want the second dash - only to be substituted. So place in the number 2:

`=SUBSTITUTE(C9, "-", "#", 2)`

| | C | D |
|----|---------------|------------------------------|
| 8 | PART # | |
| 9 | C97-27-JT | =SUBSTITUTE(C9, "-", "#", 2) |
| 10 | T28-24-FG | |
| 11 | F34-68-LJ | |
| 12 | S63-86-LL | |
| 13 | P73-57-UB | |
| 14 | H26-82-HH | |

STEP 3: Do the same for the rest of the cells by dragging the **SUBSTITUTE** formula all the way down using the left mouse button.

Note that all of the parts are now changed to your new part values:

| | C | D |
|----|---------------|-------------------|
| 8 | PART # | NEW PART # |
| 9 | C97-27-JT | C97-27#JT |
| 10 | T28-24-FG | T28-24#FG |
| 11 | F34-68-LJ | F34-68#LJ |
| 12 | S63-86-LL | S63-86#LL |
| 13 | P73-57-UB | P73-57#UB |
| 14 | H26-82-HH | H26-82#HH |
| 15 | | |

TRIM

What does it do?

Removes unneeded spaces in your text, except single spaces in between words

Formula breakdown:

=TRIM(text)

What it means:

=TRIM(text that you want extra spaces to be removed)

Example:

=TRIM("spaces in the middle")="spaces in the middle"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

In the quest for cleaner data, one of the common scenarios is removing extra spaces in our text.

Extra spaces are very difficult to spot, especially those at the end i.e. Trailing spaces.

The **TRIM** formula in Excel is one of the Data Cleansing functions and is great if you want to remove extra spaces from text whether it be from the start (leading spaces), middle or at the end (trailing spaces) of the text.

In a nutshell, the **TRIM** function in Excel removes unneeded spaces in your text, except single spaces between words.

STEP 1: We need to **enter the TRIM function**

=TRIM

STEP 2: The Trim argument - **Which text do we want to remove the extra spaces?**

This is our data source:

| TEXT | TRIMMED TEXT |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| extra spaces in front | |
| spaces in the middle | |
| extra spaces in the end | |
| spaces everywhere | |

Now place in the first cell as the argument for our Trim Formula.

=TRIM(C9)

| TEXT | |
|-------------------------|-----------|
| extra spaces in front | =TRIM(C9) |
| spaces in the middle | |
| extra spaces in the end | |
| spaces everywhere | |

STEP 3: Do the same for the rest of the cells by using the **TRIM** formula, notice all of the extra spaces have been removed:

| TEXT | TRIMMED TEXT |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| extra spaces in front | extra spaces in front |
| spaces in the middle | spaces in the middle |
| extra spaces in the end | extra spaces in the end |
| spaces everywhere | spaces everywhere |

UPPER

What does it do?

Converts all characters in the text string into uppercase

Formula breakdown:

=UPPER(text)

What it means:

=UPPER(text to be converted to upper case)

Example:

=UPPER("Excel Rocks!") ="EXCEL ROCKS!"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

We can easily change text into upper case using the **UPPER formula** in Excel. It does not convert symbols and numbers though which we will see in the examples.

If you want to fix the uneven capitalization throughout the text, then this formula is perfect for you!

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the *UPPER* function in a blank cell:

| | C | D |
|----|-----------------|-------------|
| 8 | TEXT | |
| 9 | Excel Rocks! | =UPPER(|
| 10 | EXCEL ROCKS! | |
| 11 | excel rocks! | UPPER(text) |
| 12 | Excel ROCKS 123 | |
| 13 | | |

STEP 2: The **UPPER** arguments:

text

What is the text to be converted to upper case?


Select the cell containing the text that you want to convert:

=UPPER(C9)

| | C | D |
|----|-----------------|------------|
| 8 | TEXT | |
| 9 | Excel Rocks! | =UPPER(C9) |
| 10 | EXCEL ROCKS! | |
| 11 | excel rocks! | |
| 12 | Excel ROCKS 123 | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|-----------------|--------------|
| 8 | TEXT | RESULT |
| 9 | Excel Rocks! | EXCEL ROCKS! |
| 10 | EXCEL ROCKS! | |
| 11 | excel rocks! | |
| 12 | Excel ROCKS 123 | |
| 13 | | |



You can see that the values are all now in upper case!

| | C | D |
|----|-----------------|-----------------|
| 8 | TEXT | RESULT |
| 9 | Excel Rocks! | EXCEL ROCKS! |
| 10 | EXCEL ROCKS! | EXCEL ROCKS! |
| 11 | excel rocks! | EXCEL ROCKS! |
| 12 | Excel ROCKS 123 | EXCEL ROCKS 123 |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |



VALUE

What does it do?

Converts text into a numeric value

Formula breakdown:

=VALUE([text](#))

What it means:

=VALUE([text to be converted to a numeric value](#))

Example:

=VALUE(["11/29/18"](#)) =43433

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

We can easily change text into its corresponding **numeric value** using the **VALUE formula** in Excel. It is also interesting as we can try out different types and see how it looks like in its numeric format.

Let us try out a couple of data types: Dates, currency, and time to name a few!

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the VALUE function in a blank cell:**

=VALUE(

| | C | D |
|----|----------------|-------------|
| 8 | VALUE | |
| 9 | 6:00 PM | =VALUE(|
| 10 | \$123.45 | |
| 11 | 11/19/18 | VALUE(text) |
| 12 | 11/20/18 17:00 | |

STEP 2: The **VALUE** arguments:

text

What is the text to be converted to a numeric value?


Select the cell containing the text that you want to convert:

=VALUE(C9)

| | C | D |
|----|----------------|------------|
| 8 | VALUE | |
| 9 | 6:00 PM | =VALUE(C9) |
| 10 | \$123.45 | |
| 11 | 11/19/18 | |
| 12 | 11/20/18 17:00 | |


Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|----------------|--------|
| 8 | VALUE | RESULT |
| 9 | 6:00 PM | 0.75 |
| 10 | \$123.45 | |
| 11 | 11/19/18 | |
| 12 | 11/20/18 17:00 | |
| 13 | | |



You can see that the text are all now in their numeric values!

| | C | D |
|----|----------------|-------------|
| 8 | VALUE | RESULT |
| 9 | 6:00 PM | 0.75 |
| 10 | \$123.45 | 123.45 |
| 11 | 11/19/18 | 43423 |
| 12 | 11/20/18 17:00 | 43424.70833 |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |



DATE & TIME FUNCTIONS

DATE

What does it do?

Creates a date based on the year, month and day provided

Formula breakdown:

=DATE(year, month, day)

What it means:

=DATE(year of the date, month of the date, day of the date)

Example:

=DATE(1985, 1, 3) ="1/03/85"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

If you want to create dates dynamically, Excel's **DATE formula** can do this for you! You just need to provide the year, month and day to it.

STEP 1: We need to enter the *DATE* function in a blank cell:

`=DATE(`

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------|-------|-----|---------------------|---|
| | YEAR | MONTH | DAY | <code>=DATE(</code> | |
| 9 | 1985 | 1 | 3 | | |
| 10 | 1962 | 4 | 11 | | |
| 11 | 1999 | 2 | 17 | | |

`DATE(year, month, day)`

STEP 2: The **DATE** arguments:

year

What is the year of the date?

Select the cell containing the year:

`=DATE(C9,`

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------|-------|-----|------------------------|---|
| | YEAR | MONTH | DAY | <code>=DATE(C9,</code> | |
| 9 | 1985 | 1 | 3 | | |
| 10 | 1962 | 4 | 11 | | |
| 11 | 1999 | 2 | 17 | | |

`DATE(year, month, day)`

month

What is the month of the date?

Select the cell containing the month:

`=DATE(C9, D9,`

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------|-------|-----|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 8 | YEAR | MONTH | DAY | <code>=DATE(C9, D9,</code> | |
| 9 | 1985 | 1 | 3 | | |
| 10 | 1962 | 1 | 11 | | |
| 11 | 1999 | 2 | 17 | | <code>DAY(year, month, day)</code> |
| 12 | | | | | |

day

What is the day of the date?


Select the cell containing the day:

`=DATE(C9, D9, E9)`

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------|-------|-----|--------------------------------|---|
| 8 | YEAR | MONTH | DAY | <code>=DATE(C9, D9, E9)</code> | |
| 9 | 1985 | 1 | 3 | | |
| 10 | 1962 | 1 | 11 | | |
| 11 | 1999 | 2 | 17 | | |
| 12 | | | | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------|-------|-----|---------|---|
| 8 | YEAR | MONTH | DAY | RESULT | |
| 9 | 1985 | 1 | 3 | 1/03/85 | |
| 10 | 1962 | 4 | 11 | | |
| 11 | 1999 | 2 | 17 | | |
| 12 | | | | | |



You now have your dates generated!

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------|-------|-----|---------|---|
| 8 | YEAR | MONTH | DAY | RESULT | |
| 9 | 1985 | 1 | 3 | 1/03/85 | |
| 10 | 1962 | 4 | 11 | 4/11/62 | |
| 11 | 1999 | 2 | 17 | 2/17/99 | |
| 12 | | | | | |
| 13 | | | | | |

DATEDIF

What does it do?

Calculates the number of Days, Months, or Years between two dates

Formula breakdown:

=DATEDIF(**Start Date**, **End Date**, **Interval**)

What it means:

=DATEDIF(**starting date**, **ending date**, **the unit of measurement**)

Where **INTERVAL** is:

"**m**" Months , "**ym**" Months Excluding Years

"**d**" Days , "**yd**" Days Excluding Years

"**y**" Years , "**md**" Days Excluding Years And Months

Example:

=DATEDIF("5/18/80", "11/28/18", "m") =462

Exercise Workbook:

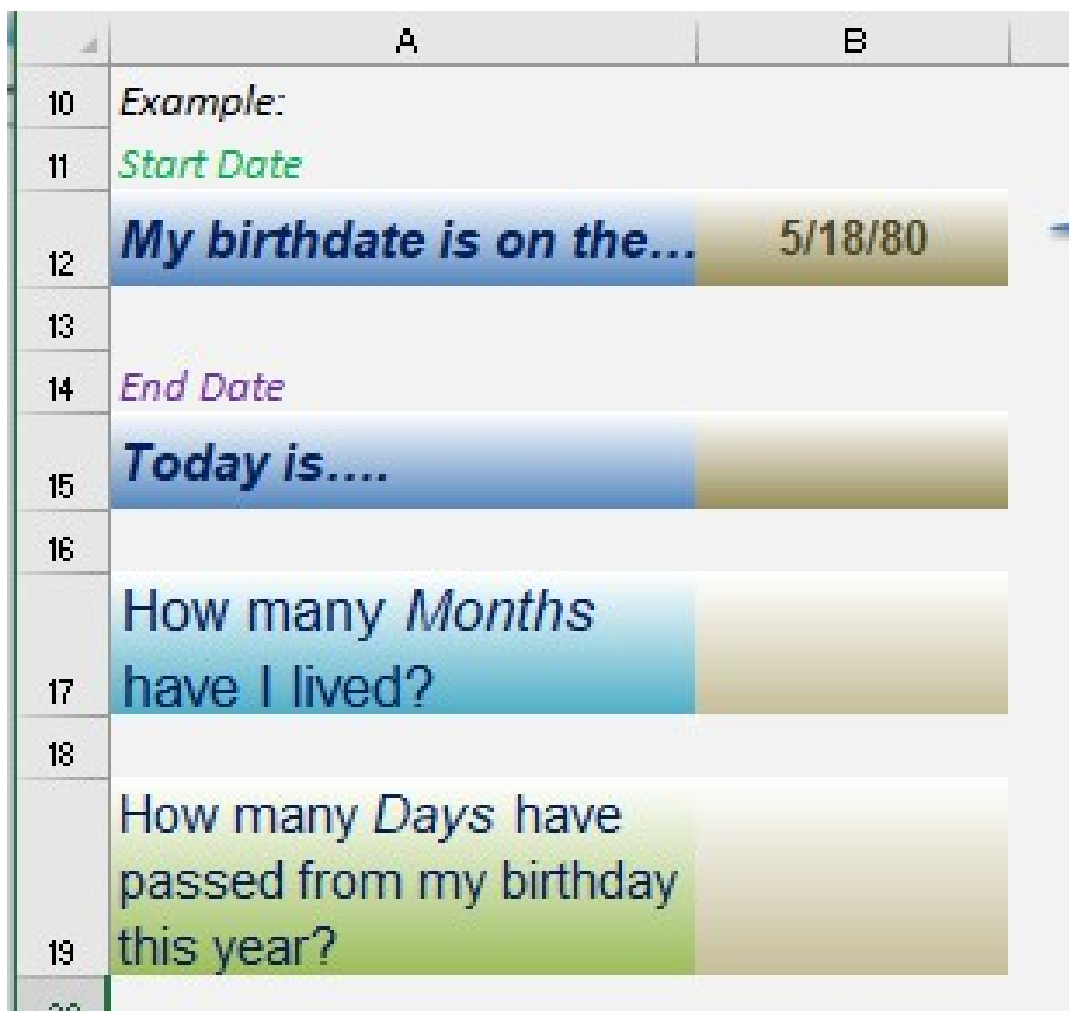
[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The **DATEDIF** function is a mystery function within Excel. When you write it out in a workbook it doesn't give you any hints like other functions would and if you look it up in the function list you would not find it! Creepy...

The **DATEDIF** function stands for "**date difference**" and it calculates the number of Days, Months, or Years between two dates.

So if you want to find out how many days, years or months have passed since you were born, well this is the formula for you! Well you can also extend this to project start and end dates, but you get my point.

STEP 1: Enter the **Start Date**



The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with two columns, A and B, and rows 10 through 20. The content is as follows:

| | A | B |
|----|---|---------|
| 10 | Example: | |
| 11 | Start Date | |
| 12 | My birthdate is on the... | 5/18/80 |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | End Date | |
| 15 | Today is.... | |
| 16 | | |
| 17 | How many Months have I lived? | |
| 18 | | |
| 19 | How many Days have passed from my birthday this year? | |
| 20 | | |

STEP 2: Enter the **End Date**

| | A | B |
|----|--|----------|
| 10 | <i>Example:</i> | |
| 11 | <i>Start Date</i> | |
| 12 | <i>My birthdate is on the...</i> | 5/18/80 |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | <i>End Date</i> | |
| 15 | <i>Today is....</i> | +TODAY() |
| 16 | | |
| 17 | <i>How many Months have I lived?</i> | |
| 18 | | |
| 19 | <i>How many Days have passed from my birthday this year?</i> | |

STEP 3: To get the **number of months** as a difference, type in the following formula

`=DATEDIF(B12, B15, "m")`

The **DATEDIF** arguments:

B12 is the **startdate**

B15 is the **enddate**

m tells it to **count in total months**

| | A | B | C |
|----|---|-------------------------|---|
| 10 | Example: | | |
| 11 | Start Date | | |
| 12 | My birthdate is on the.. | 5/18/80 | |
| 13 | | | |
| 14 | End Date | | |
| 15 | Today is.... | 10/14/14 | |
| 16 | | | |
| 17 | How many Months have I lived? | =DATEDIF(B12, B15, "m") | |
| 18 | | DATEDIF() | |
| 19 | How many Days have passed from my birthday this year? | | |

STEP 4: To get the **number of days on this year** from your birthday, type in the following formula

`=DATEDIF(B12, B15, "yd")`

The **DATEDIF** arguments:

B12 is the **startdate**

B15 is the **enddate**

yd tells it to **count in days but excluding the year portion**

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|---|---------------------------------|---|---|
| 10 | <i>Example:</i> | | | |
| 11 | <i>Start Date</i> | | | |
| 12 | My birthdate is on the.. | 5/18/80 | | |
| 13 | | | | |
| 14 | <i>End Date</i> | | | |
| 15 | Today is.... | 10/14/14 | | |
| 16 | | | | |
| 17 | How many Months have I lived? | 412 | | |
| 18 | | | | |
| 19 | How many Days h passed from my bi this year? | =DATEDIF(B12, B15, "yd") | | |
| 20 | | | | |

And you have your calculated differences!

| | A | B |
|----|---|-----------------|
| 10 | <i>Example:</i> | |
| 11 | <i>Start Date</i> | |
| 12 | <i>My birthdate is on the...</i> | 5/18/80 |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | <i>End Date</i> | |
| 15 | <i>Today is....</i> | 10/04/14 |
| 16 | | |
| 17 | <i>How many Months have I lived?</i> | 412 |
| 18 | | |
| 19 | <i>How many Days have passed from my birthday this year?</i> | 139 |

DATEVALUE

What does it do?

Converts a date that is in text format, into Excel's date serial number format

Formula breakdown:

=DATEVALUE([date_text](#))

What it means:

=DATEVALUE([the date to be converted](#))

Example:

=DATEVALUE("December 12, 2018") =43446

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Ever had a lot of dates in different textual formats? These are a pain to deal with! Thankfully there is the **DATEVALUE Formula** in Excel that converts these text dates into the proper Excel date values.

Once converted, you can perform your analysis since they are now in the Excel date format.

STEP 1: We need to **enter the DATEVALUE function in a blank cell:**

=DATEVALUE(

| | C | D |
|----|-------------------|----------------------|
| 8 | DATE | |
| 9 | 4/11/1999 | =DATEVALUE(|
| 10 | December 12, 2018 | |
| 11 | 12 December 2018 | DATEVALUE(date_text) |
| 12 | Dec 12, 2018 | |

STEP 2: The **DATEVALUE** arguments:

date_text

What is the textual date that you want to convert to the proper Excel date?


Select the cell containing the date:

=DATEVALUE(C9)

| | C | D |
|----|-------------------|----------------|
| 8 | DATE | |
| 9 | 4/11/1999 | =DATEVALUE(C9) |
| 10 | December 12, 2018 | |
| 11 | 12 December 2018 | |
| 12 | Dec 12, 2018 | |
| 13 | | |


Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|-------------------|-----------|
| 8 | DATE | DATEVALUE |
| 9 | 4/11/1999 | 36261 |
| 10 | December 12, 2018 | |
| 11 | 12 December 2018 | |
| 12 | Dec 12, 2018 | |
| 13 | | |



You now have your proper dates! Notice the December 12 dates all resulted to the same **DATEVALUE**!

| | C | D |
|----|-------------------|------------------|
| 8 | DATE | DATEVALUE |
| 9 | 4/11/1999 | 36261 |
| 10 | December 12, 2018 | 43446 |
| 11 | 12 December 2018 | 43446 |
| 12 | Dec 12, 2018 | 43446 |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |



DAY

What does it do?

Gets the day from the date

Formula breakdown:

=DAY([serial_number](#))

What it means:

=DAY([date where the day will be extracted from](#))

Example:

=DAY("4/11/85") =11

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

I recall where I had a lot of dates and I wanted to extract the day of the dates one-by-one... It was too much of a hassle! Thankfully there is Excel's **DAY Formula** to do that for me!

STEP 1: We need to enter the *DAY* function in a blank cell:

=DAY(

| | C | D |
|----|----------|--------------------|
| 8 | DATE | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | =DAY(|
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | DAY(serial_number) |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |

STEP 2: The **DAY** arguments:

serial_number

What is the date that you want to extract the day from?


Select the cell containing the date:

=DAY(C9)

| | C | D |
|----|----------|----------|
| 8 | DATE | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | =DAY(C9) |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |
| 13 | | |


Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|----------|-----|
| 8 | DATE | DAY |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | 11 |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |
| 13 | | |



You now have your days extracted!

| | C | D |
|----|-------------|------------|
| 8 | DATE | DAY |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | 11 |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | 6 |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | 17 |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | 28 |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |



DAY360

What does it do?

Gets the number of days between two dates using 30-day months

Formula breakdown:

=`DAYS360`(`start_date`, `end_date`, [`method`])

What it means:

=`DAYS360`(`starting date`, `ending date`, [`US or European Method`])

Example:

=`DAYS360`("1/01/18", "12/31/18") =360

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

If you need to get the difference of two dates, but want to use **30-day months** in calculating the difference, Excel has you covered! We can use the **DAYS360 Formula** to do this. It can be useful in the accounting world and there are two modes that are used to count the number of days:

US Method (Default)

- If your start date is the last day of the month, then it is treated as the 30th day of the same month
- If your end date is the last day of the month and your start date is earlier than the 30th day of the month, then the end date is treated as the 1st day of the NEXT month, otherwise the end date is treated as the 30th day of the same month

European Method

- If your start date or end date is the 31st day of the month, then it is treated as the 30th day of the same month

We will be using the Default US Method in our examples below!

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the DAYS360 function in a blank cell:**

=DAYS360(

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------|----------|-----------|---|---|
| 8 | START DATE | END DATE | | | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | 12/31/18 | =DAYS360(| | |
| 10 | 1/01/20 | 12/31/20 | | | |
| 11 | 2/01/19 | 3/01/19 | | | |
| 12 | 1/15/17 | 3/15/19 | | | |

STEP 2: The **DAYS360** arguments:

start_date

What is the start date?

Select the cell containing the starting date:

=DAYS360(**C9**,

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------|----------|--------------|---|---|
| 8 | START DATE | END DATE | | | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | 12/31/18 | =DAYS360(C9, | | |
| 10 | 1/01/20 | 12/31/20 | | | |
| 11 | 2/01/19 | 3/01/19 | | | |
| 12 | 1/15/17 | 3/15/19 | | | |

end_date

What is the end date?

Select the cell containing the ending date:

=DAYS360(C9, **D9**)

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------|----------|------------------|
| 8 | START DATE | END DATE | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | 12/31/18 | =DAYS360(C9, D9) |
| 10 | 1/01/20 | 12/31/20 | |
| 11 | 2/01/19 | 3/01/19 | |
| 12 | 1/15/17 | 3/15/19 | |
| 13 | | | |

We will leave the method as blank, which will use the default US method. Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------|----------|----------------|
| 8 | START DATE | END DATE | NUMBER OF DAYS |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | 12/31/18 | 360 |
| 10 | 1/01/20 | 12/31/20 | |
| 11 | 2/01/19 | 3/01/19 | |
| 12 | 1/15/17 | 3/15/19 | |

You now have your differences using 30-day months! Notice that 1 year is treated as 360 days (30 days x 12 months).

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|------------|----------|----------------|---|
| 8 | START DATE | END DATE | NUMBER OF DAYS | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | 12/31/18 | 360 | |
| 10 | 1/01/20 | 12/31/20 | 360 | |
| 11 | 2/01/19 | 3/01/19 | 30 | |
| 12 | 1/15/17 | 3/15/19 | 780 | |
| 13 | | | | |

DAYS

What does it do?

Gets the number of days between two dates

Formula breakdown:

=DAYS(end_date, start_date)

What it means:

=DAYS(ending date, starting date)

Example:

=DAYS("12/31/18", "1/01/18") =364

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Have two dates that you want to check what is the difference in days? No problem! Excel's **DAYS Formula** will compute this easily for you!

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the *DAYS* function in a blank cell:

=DAYS(

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------|----------|----------------------------|
| 8 | START DATE | END DATE | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | 1/01/19 | =DAYS(|
| 10 | 1/01/20 | 1/01/21 | |
| 11 | 2/01/19 | 3/01/19 | DAYS(end date, start date) |
| 12 | 1/15/1/ | 3/15/19 | |

STEP 2: The **DAYS** arguments:

end_date

What is the ending date?

Select the cell containing the ending date:

=DAYS(D9,

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|------------|---------|----------------------------|---|
| 8 | START DATE | | END DATE | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | 1/01/19 | =DAYS(D9, | |
| 10 | 1/01/20 | 1/01/21 | | |
| 11 | 2/01/19 | 3/01/19 | DAYS(end_date, start_date) | |
| 12 | 1/15/17 | 3/15/19 | | |

start_date

What is the starting date?


Select the cell containing the starting date:

=DAYS(D9, C9)

| | C | D | E | |
|----|------------|---------|---------------|--|
| 8 | START DATE | | END DATE | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | 1/01/19 | =DAYS(D9, C9) | |
| 10 | 1/01/20 | 1/01/21 | | |
| 11 | 2/01/19 | 3/01/19 | | |
| 12 | 1/15/17 | 3/15/19 | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | E |
|----|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 3 | START DATE | END DATE | NUMBER OF DAYS |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | 1/01/19 | 365 |
| 10 | 1/01/20 | 1/01/21 | |
| 11 | 2/01/19 | 3/01/19 | |
| 12 | 1/15/17 | 3/15/19 | |
| 13 | | | |



You now have your differences in days!

| | C | D | E |
|----|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 8 | START DATE | END DATE | NUMBER OF DAYS |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | 1/01/19 | 365 |
| 10 | 1/01/20 | 1/01/21 | 366 |
| 11 | 2/01/19 | 3/01/19 | 28 |
| 12 | 1/15/17 | 3/15/19 | 789 |
| 13 | | | |

ENDOFMONTH

What does it do?

Returns the last day of the month after a start date

Formula breakdown:

=EOMONTH(start_date, months)

What it means:

= EOMONTH (Your Start Date, enter 0 for current end of month, 1 for the next end of month, and so on..)

Example:

=EOMONTH("1/13/15",1) ="2/28/15"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The **EOMONTH (EndOfMonth)** function in Excel is one that most people do not use because they just don't know that it exists.

It is a great Excel function to use if you want to see when the month end date is from a current date's value.

So if you have sales reps who make a sale during the month and their commission is due to be paid at the end of the next month, the **EOMONTH** function will help you determine the total sales due.

STEP 1: We need to enter the **EOMONTH** function in a blank cell:

=EOMONTH(

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|----------------------|-----------|--------------|---------------------|
| 11 | SALES REPRESENTATIVE | SALE DATE | SALES AMOUNT | COMMISSION DUE DATE |
| 12 | Homer Simpson | 1/13/15 | \$78,782 | =EOMONTH() |
| 13 | Ian Wright | 1/25/15 | \$72,602 | |
| 14 | John Michaloudis | 2/06/15 | \$48,503 | |
| 15 | Michael Jackson | 2/18/15 | \$44,316 | |
| 16 | Homer Simpson | 3/02/15 | \$47,810 | |
| 17 | Ian Wright | 3/14/15 | \$77,361 | |
| 18 | John Michaloudis | 3/26/15 | \$51,146 | |
| 19 | Michael Jackson | 4/07/15 | \$28,673 | |
| 20 | Homer Simpson | 4/19/15 | \$31,810 | |
| 21 | Ian Wright | 5/01/15 | \$52,916 | |
| 22 | John Michaloudis | 5/13/15 | \$71,305 | |
| 23 | Michael Jackson | 5/25/15 | \$27,757 | |
| 24 | Homer Simpson | 6/06/15 | \$47,404 | |
| 25 | Ian Wright | 6/18/15 | \$77,547 | |

STEP 2: The EOMONTH arguments:

start_date

What is your start_date?

=EOMONTH(B12,

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|----------------------|-----------|--------------|---------------------|
| 11 | SALES REPRESENTATIVE | SALE DATE | SALES AMOUNT | COMMISSION DUE DATE |
| 12 | Homer Simpson | 1/13/15 | \$18,182 | =EOMONTH(B12, |
| 13 | Ian Wright | 1/25/15 | \$72,602 | |
| 14 | John Michaloudis | 2/05/15 | \$18,503 | |
| 15 | Michael Jackson | 2/18/15 | \$44,316 | |
| 16 | Homer Simpson | 3/02/15 | \$47,810 | |
| 17 | Ian Wright | 3/14/15 | \$77,361 | |
| 18 | John Michaloudis | 3/26/15 | \$51,146 | |
| 19 | Michael Jackson | 4/07/15 | \$28,673 | |
| 20 | Homer Simpson | 4/19/15 | \$31,810 | |
| 21 | Ian Wright | 5/01/15 | \$52,916 | |
| 22 | John Michaloudis | 5/13/15 | \$71,305 | |
| 23 | Michael Jackson | 5/25/15 | \$27,757 | |
| 24 | Homer Simpson | 6/06/15 | \$47,404 | |
| 25 | Ian Wright | 6/18/15 | \$11,541 | |

months

Which end of month do you want?

We can type in 0 for the current End of Month, or 1 for the next End of Month, and so on.

`=EOMONTH(B12, 1)`

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|----------------------|-----------|--------------|---------------------|
| 11 | SALES REPRESENTATIVE | SALE DATE | SALES AMOUNT | COMMISSION DUE DATE |
| 12 | Homer Simpson | 1/13/15 | \$78,782 | =EOMONTH(B12, 1) |
| 13 | Ian Wright | 1/25/15 | \$72,602 | |
| 14 | John Michaloudis | 2/05/15 | \$48,507 | |
| 15 | Michael Jackson | 2/18/15 | \$44,316 | |
| 16 | Homer Simpson | 3/02/15 | \$47,810 | |
| 17 | Ian Wright | 3/14/15 | \$77,361 | |
| 18 | John Michaloudis | 3/26/15 | \$51,146 | |
| 19 | Michael Jackson | 4/07/15 | \$28,673 | |
| 20 | Homer Simpson | 4/19/15 | \$31,810 | |
| 21 | Ian Wright | 5/01/15 | \$52,916 | |
| 22 | John Michaloudis | 5/13/15 | \$71,305 | |
| 23 | Michael Jackson | 5/25/15 | \$27,757 | |
| 24 | Homer Simpson | 6/06/15 | \$47,404 | |
| 25 | Ian Wright | 6/18/15 | \$77,547 | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|----------------------|-----------|--------------|---------------------|
| | SALES REPRESENTATIVE | SALE DATE | SALES AMOUNT | COMMISSION DUE DATE |
| 11 | | | | |
| 12 | Homer Simpson | 1/13/15 | \$78,782 | 2/28/15 |
| 13 | Ian Wright | 1/25/15 | \$77,602 | |
| 14 | John Michaloudis | 2/06/15 | \$48,503 | |
| 15 | Michael Jackson | 2/18/15 | \$44,316 | |
| 16 | Homer Simpson | 3/02/15 | \$17,810 | |
| 17 | Ian Wright | 3/14/15 | \$77,361 | |
| 18 | John Michaloudis | 3/26/15 | \$51,146 | |
| 19 | Michael Jackson | 4/07/15 | \$28,673 | |
| 20 | Homer Simpson | 4/19/15 | \$31,810 | |
| 21 | Ian Wright | 5/01/15 | \$52,916 | |
| 22 | John Michaloudis | 5/13/15 | \$71,305 | |
| 23 | Michael Jackson | 5/25/15 | \$27,757 | |
| 24 | Homer Simpson | 6/06/15 | \$17,101 | |
| 25 | Ian Wright | 6/18/15 | \$77,547 | |

You now have all of results!

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|----------------------|-----------|--------------|---------------------|
| 11 | SALES REPRESENTATIVE | SALE DATE | SALES AMOUNT | COMMISSION DUE DATE |
| 12 | Homer Simpson | 1/13/15 | \$78,782 | 2/28/15 |
| 13 | Ian Wright | 1/25/15 | \$72,602 | 2/28/15 |
| 14 | John Michaloudis | 2/06/15 | \$48,503 | 3/31/15 |
| 15 | Michael Jackson | 2/18/15 | \$44,316 | 3/31/15 |
| 16 | Homer Simpson | 3/02/15 | \$47,810 | 4/30/15 |
| 17 | Ian Wright | 3/14/15 | \$77,361 | 4/30/15 |
| 18 | John Michaloudis | 3/26/15 | \$51,146 | 4/30/15 |
| 19 | Michael Jackson | 4/07/15 | \$28,673 | 5/31/15 |
| 20 | Homer Simpson | 4/19/15 | \$31,810 | 5/31/15 |
| 21 | Ian Wright | 5/01/15 | \$72,916 | 6/30/15 |
| 22 | John Michaloudis | 5/13/15 | \$71,305 | 6/30/15 |
| 23 | Michael Jackson | 5/25/15 | \$27,757 | 6/30/15 |
| 24 | Homer Simpson | 6/06/15 | \$47,404 | 7/31/15 |
| 25 | Ian Wright | 6/18/15 | \$77,547 | 7/31/15 |

HOUR

What does it do?

Gets the hour from the time

Formula breakdown:

=HOUR([serial_number](#))

What it means:

=HOUR([time where the hour will be extracted from](#))

Example:

=HOUR("6:00 PM") =18

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

I recall wherein I had a lot of times and I wanted to extract the hour of the times one-by-one... It was too much of a hassle! Thankfully there is Excel's **HOUR Formula** to do that for me!

A couple of interesting things on the **HOUR Formula**:

- The hour it returns to you is similar to military time ranging from 0 - 23
- If it's a date time, then the date gets ignored
- If the time is greater than 24 hours, then it simply converts it to days and hours, then returns the hour component only

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the *HOUR* function in a blank cell:

=HOUR(

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|---------------------|
| 8 | DATE | |
| 9 | 12:00 AM | =HOUR(|
| 10 | 6:00 AM | |
| 11 | 12:00 PM | HOUR(serial_number) |
| 12 | 6:00 PM | |
| 13 | 1/01/18 9:30 | |
| 14 | 36:00 | |
| 15 | 6:30 AM | |

STEP 2: The **HOUR** arguments:

serial_number

What is the time that you want to extract the hour from?


Select the cell containing the time:

=HOUR(C9)

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|-----------|
| 8 | DATE | |
| 9 | 12:00 AM | =HOUR(C9) |
| 10 | 6:00 AM | |
| 11 | 12:00 PM | |
| 12 | 6:00 PM | |
| 13 | 1/01/18 9:30 | |
| 14 | 36:00 | |
| 15 | 6:30 AM | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|------|
| 8 | DATE | HOUR |
| 9 | 12:00 AM | 0 |
| 10 | 6:00 AM | |
| 11 | 12:00 PM | |
| 12 | 6:00 PM | |
| 13 | 1/01/18 9:30 | |
| 14 | 36:00 | |
| 15 | 6:30 AM | |
| 16 | | |



You now have your years extracted!

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|-------------|
| 8 | DATE | HOUR |
| 9 | 12:00 AM | 0 |
| 10 | 6:00 AM | 6 |
| 11 | 12:00 PM | 12 |
| 12 | 6:00 PM | 18 |
| 13 | 1/01/18 9:30 | 9 |
| 14 | 36:00 | 12 |
| 15 | 6:30 AM | 6 |
| 16 | | |
| 17 | | |



MONTH

What does it do?

Gets the month from the date

Formula breakdown:

=MONTH([serial_number](#))

What it means:

=MONTH([date where the month will be extracted from](#))

Example:

=MONTH("4/11/85") =4

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

I recall wherein I had a lot of dates and I wanted to extract the month of the dates one-by-one... It was too much of a hassle! Thankfully there is Excel's **MONTH Formula** to do that for me!

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the MONTH function in a blank cell:**

=MONTH(

| | C | D |
|----|----------|----------------------|
| 8 | DATE | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | =MONTH(|
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | MONTH(serial_number) |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |
| 13 | | |

STEP 2: The **MONTH** arguments:

serial_number

What is the date that you want to extract the month from?


Select the cell containing the date:

=MONTH(C9)

| | C | D |
|----|----------|------------|
| 8 | DATE | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | =MONTH(C9) |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |
| 13 | | |


Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|----------|-------|
| 8 | DATE | MONTH |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | 4 |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |
| 13 | | |



You now have your months extracted!

| | C | D |
|----|-------------|--------------|
| 8 | DATE | MONTH |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | 4 |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | 3 |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | 2 |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | 12 |
| 13 | | |



NETWORKDAYS

What does it do?

Gets the number of working days between two dates

Formula breakdown:

=NETWORKDAYS([start_date](#), [end_date](#), [[holidays](#)])

What it means:

=NETWORKDAYS([starting date](#), [ending date](#), [[holidays to exclude](#)])

Example:

=NETWORKDAYS("1/01/18", "1/07/18", A9:A11) =number of days minus holidays

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

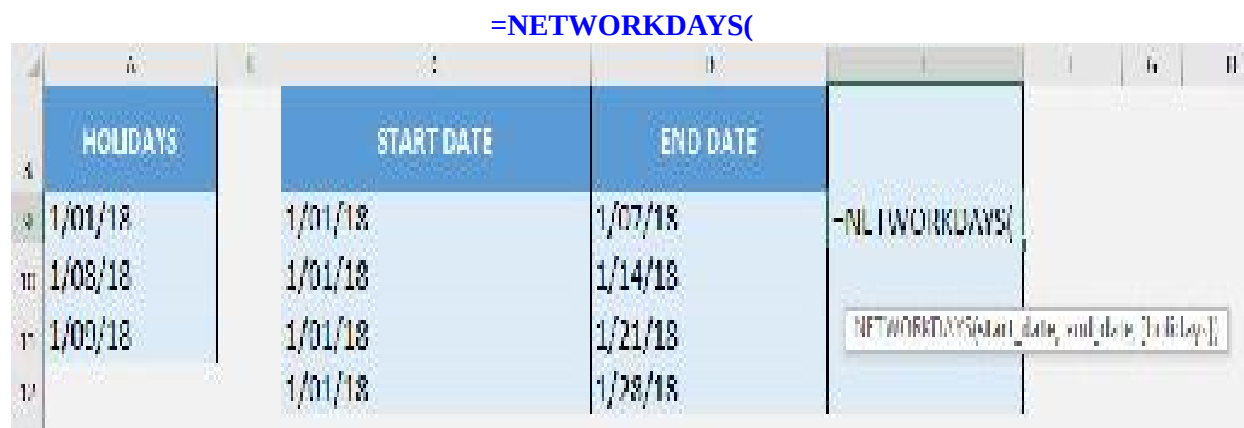
If you want to calculate the number of working days, it is very difficult to do by hand! Imagine going through your calendar and counting the weekdays week per week. Thankfully there is Excel's **NETWORKDAYS Formula!**

The **NETWORKDAYS Formula** will exclude the weekends in the count, and you can also provide it a list of holidays for it to exclude as well in the count!

Let us try out in our example below from **January 1, 2018 to January 28, 2018**, for these 4 weeks it should be a **total of 20 working days**. Let us add in **3 holidays** during this period, so that total working days will be reduced to **17 working days**.

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the **NETWORKDAYS** function in a blank cell:



STEP 2: The **NETWORKDAYS** arguments:

start_date


What is the start date?

Select the cell containing the starting date:

=NETWORKDAYS(C9,

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|----------|---|------------|----------|----------------|---|
| | HOLIDAYS | | START DATE | END DATE | NUMBER OF DAYS | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | | 1/01/18 | 1/07/18 | 1 | |
| 10 | 1/08/18 | | 1/01/18 | 1/14/18 | | |
| 11 | 1/09/18 | | 1/01/18 | 1/21/18 | | |
| 12 | | | 1/01/18 | 1/28/18 | | |
| 13 | | | | | | |
| 14 | | | | | | |



You now have the number of working days and the holidays are excluded!

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|----------|---|------------|----------|----------------|---|
| | HOLIDAYS | | START DATE | END DATE | NUMBER OF DAYS | |
| 9 | 1/01/18 | | 1/01/18 | 1/07/18 | 1 | |
| 10 | 1/08/18 | | 1/01/18 | 1/14/18 | 7 | |
| 11 | 1/09/18 | | 1/01/18 | 1/21/18 | 12 | |
| 12 | | | 1/01/18 | 1/28/18 | 17 | |
| 13 | | | | | | |
| 14 | | | | | | |

TODAY

What does it do?

Returns today's date

Formula breakdown:

=TODAY()

What it means:

=TODAY()

Example:

=TODAY() ="11/29/2018"

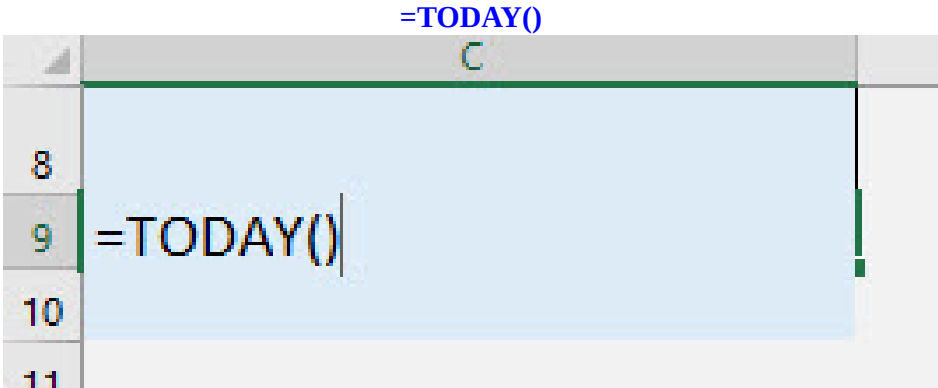
Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

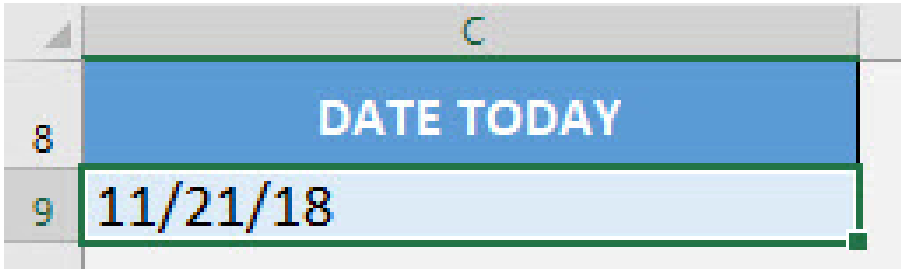
Have a dynamic formula that needs the current date and you are tired of changing the date everyday? Use Excel's **TODAY Formula** to have it update dynamically!

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the *TODAY* function in a blank cell:



And just like that, you already have today's date!



WEEKDAY

What does it do?

Returns the day of the week corresponding to a date. The day is given as an integer, ranging from 1 (Sunday) to 7 (Saturday), by default.

Formula breakdown:

=WEEKDAY([Serial_Number](#), [\[Return_Type\]](#))

What it means:

=WEEKDAY([Date](#), [\[Numbers 1 \(Sunday\) through 7 \(Saturday\)\]](#))

Example:

=WEEKDAY("5/18/85",1) =7

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The **WEEKDAY** function returns the day of the week corresponding to a date. The day is given as an integer, ranging from 1 (Sunday) to 7 (Saturday).

So if you want to find out on what day you were born, then the **WEEKDAY** function will remind you.

STEP 1: Enter any date that you want.

| | A | B |
|----|-------------------------------------|---------|
| 10 | | |
| 11 | <i>Example:</i> | |
| 12 | | |
| 13 | <i>My birthdate is on the..</i> | 5/18/85 |
| 14 | | |
| 15 | | |
| 16 | What day of the week was I born on? | |
| 17 | | |

STEP 2: The **WEEKDAY** arguments:

date

What is the date?

Select the date you have entered

=WEEKDAY(B13,

| | A | B | C |
|----|---|----------------------|---|
| 10 | | | |
| 11 | <i>Example:</i> | | |
| 12 | | | |
| 13 | My birthdate is on the.. | 5/18/85 | |
| 14 | | | |
| 15 | | | |
| 16 | What day of the was I born on? | =WEEKDAY(B13, | |
| 17 | | | |

return_Type

What kind of output do you want to show?

For Sunday=1 through to Saturday=7, use 1

For Monday=1 through to Sunday=7, use 2

Type in **1** to get the number of the day of the week

We get a result of 7 here, which signifies a **Saturday**. As Type 1 represents days **ranging from 1 (Sunday) to 7 (Saturday)**.

=WEEKDAY(B13, 1)

| | A | B | C |
|----|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| 10 | | | |
| 11 | <i>Example:</i> | | |
| 12 | | | |
| 13 | <i>My birthdate is on the..</i> | 5/18/85 | |
| 14 | | | |
| 15 | | | |
| 16 | What day of the was I born on? | =WEEKDAY(B13, 1) | |
| 17 | | WEEKDAY(serial_number, [return_type]) | |

Now we know the day in an instant!

| | A | B |
|----|--|----------------|
| 10 | | |
| 11 | <i>Example:</i> | |
| 12 | | |
| 13 | <i>My birthdate is on the...</i> | 5/18/85 |
| 14 | | |
| 15 | | |
| 16 | What day of the week was I born on? | 7 |
| 17 | | |

WEEKNUM

What does it do?

Gets the week number from the date

Formula breakdown:

=WEEKNUM(serial_number, [return_type])

What it means:

=WEEKNUM(date where the week number will be retrieved, [day when the week will begin])

Example:

=WEEKNUM("4/11/1985") =15

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Do you need to retrieve the week number from a given date? The **WEEKNUM Formula** in Excel is perfect for this!

There are a couple of interesting points to take note of the **WEEKNUM Formula**:

- The return type parameter specifies which day of the week is used to start a new week number. For our examples, we will be using the default. But there are a number of settings that you can use:
- 1 (default) - Sunday
- 2 - Monday
- 11 - Monday
- 12 - Tuesday
- 13 - Wednesday
- 14 - Thursday
- 15 - Friday
- 16 - Saturday
- 17 - Sunday
- 21 - Monday, the difference here is it uses the European week numbering system, week 1 is the week containing the first Thursday of the year as specified in [ISO 8601](#)

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the WEEKNUM function in a blank cell:**

=WEEKNUM(

| | C | D | E |
|----|----------|--|---|
| 8 | DATE | =WEEKNUM(WEEKNUM(serial_number, [return_type]) | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | | |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | | |
| 11 | 1/01/50 | | |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | | |
| 13 | | | |

STEP 2: The **WEEKNUM** arguments:

serial_number

What is the date to extract the week number from?


Select the cell containing the date:

=WEEKNUM(C9)

| | C | D |
|----|----------|--------------|
| 8 | DATE | =WEEKNUM(C9) |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 1/01/50 | |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |
| 13 | | |


Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|-------------|--------------------|
| 8 | DATE | WEEK NUMBER |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | 15 |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 1/01/50 | |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |



You now have your week numbers!

| | C | D |
|----|-------------|--------------------|
| 8 | DATE | WEEK NUMBER |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | 15 |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | 10 |
| 11 | 1/01/50 | 1 |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | 52 |
| 13 | | |



WORKDAY

What does it do?

Adds/Subtracts a specified number of workdays to a Date, which will give you a Future/Past Date

Formula breakdown:

=WORKDAY(start_date, days, [holidays])

What it means:

=WORKDAY(specified date, number of work days to add/subtract, [holidays to be considered])

Example:

=WORKDAY("2/12/2010",10) ="2/26/2010"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

If you want to calculate the future date based on a number of working days added, it will be difficult to manually calculate this!

The hard way: I would normally grab my calendar, and count the days one by one!

The easy way: Excel's **WORKDAY** formula!

STEP 1: We need to enter the **WORKDAY** function in a blank cell:

=WORKDAY(

| | DATE | # OF WORKDAYS ADDED | |
|----|---------|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 3 | | | |
| 9 | 2/12/10 | 10 | =WORKDAY(|
| 10 | 1/15/18 | 150 | |
| 11 | 3/05/09 | 73 | WORKDAY(start_date, days, [holidays]) |
| 12 | 5/15/15 | 55 | |

STEP 2: The **WORKDAY** arguments:

start_date

What is the specified date?

Select the cell containing the date you want to add the number of workdays to:

=WORKDAY(C9,

| | C | D | |
|----|---------|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 8 | DATE | # OF WORKDAYS ADDED | |
| 9 | 2/12/10 | 10 | -WORKDAY(C9, |
| 10 | 1/15/18 | 150 | |
| 11 | 3/05/09 | 23 | WORKDAY(start_date, days, [holidays]) |
| 12 | 5/15/15 | 55 | |

days

How many work days to be added?

Select the cell containing the number of work days to be added (i.e The number of non-weekend and non-holiday days after the start date):

=WORKDAY(C9, D9)

| | C | D | F |
|----|---------|------------------------|------------------|
| 8 | DATE | # OF WORKDAYS ADDED | |
| 9 | 2/12/10 | 10 | =WORKDAY(C9, D9) |
| 10 | 1/15/18 | 150 | |
| 11 | 3/05/09 | 23 | |
| 12 | 5/15/15 | 55 | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

You now have your future dates with the work days added!

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------|------------------------|---------|---|
| 8 | DATE | # OF WORKDAYS ADDED | RESULT | |
| 9 | 2/12/10 | 10 | 2/26/10 | |
| 10 | 1/15/18 | 150 | 8/13/18 | |
| 11 | 3/05/09 | 23 | 1/07/09 | |
| 12 | 5/15/15 | 55 | 1/31/15 | |
| 13 | | | | |

YEAR

What does it do?

Extracts the Year from the Date

Formula breakdown:

=YEAR([serial_number](#))

What it means:

=YEAR([date where the year will be extracted from](#))

Example:

=YEAR("4/11/85") =1985

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

I recall wherein I had a lot of dates and I wanted to extract the year of the dates one-by-one... It was too much of a hassle! Thankfully there is Excel's **YEAR Formula** to do that for me!

STEP 1: We need to enter the **YEAR** function in a blank cell:

=YEAR(

| | C | D |
|----|----------|---------------------|
| 8 | DATE | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | =YEAR(|
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | YEAR(serial_number) |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |

STEP 2: The **YEAR** arguments:

serial_number

What is the Date that you want to extract the Year from?


Select the cell containing the date:

=YEAR(C9)

| | C | D |
|----|----------|-----------|
| 8 | DATE | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | =YEAR(C9) |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |
| 13 | | |


Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|----------|------|
| 8 | DATE | YEAR |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | 1985 |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | |
| 13 | | |



You now have your years extracted!

| | C | D |
|----|-------------|-------------|
| 8 | DATE | YEAR |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | 1985 |
| 10 | 3/06/62 | 1962 |
| 11 | 2/17/50 | 1950 |
| 12 | 12/28/90 | 1990 |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |



INFORMATION FUNCTIONS

ISBLANK

What does it do?

Checks if the cell value is empty or not

Formula breakdown:

=ISBLANK(value)

What it means:

=ISBLANK(value to be checked to see if it is empty or not)

Example:

=ISBLANK("abc") =FALSE

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Have a bunch of empty values and you need to check all of your cells? The **ISBLANK Formula** in Excel is perfect for this!

STEP 1: We need to **enter the ISBLANK function in a blank cell:**

`=ISBLANK(`

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|----------------|
| 8 | VALUE | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | =ISBLANK(|
| 10 | | |
| 11 | How are you? | ISBLANK(value) |
| 12 | 12.50 | |
| 13 | | |

STEP 2: The **ISBLANK** arguments:

value

What is the value to be checked?

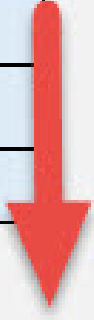
Select the cell containing the value you want to be checked if it's blank:

`=ISBLANK(C9)`

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|--------------|
| 8 | VALUE | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | =ISBLANK(C9) |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | How are you? | |
| 12 | 12.50 | |
| 13 | | |


Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|--------------|
| 8 | VALUE | IS IT BLANK? |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | FALSE |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | How are you? | |
| 12 | 12.50 | |
| 13 | | |



You can now see which ones are the blank values!

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|--------------|
| 8 | VALUE | IS IT BLANK? |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | FALSE |
| 10 | | TRUE |
| 11 | How are you? | FALSE |
| 12 | 12.50 | FALSE |
| 13 | | |



ISERROR

What does it do?

Checks if the cell value is an error or not

Formula breakdown:

=ISERROR([value](#))

What it means:

=ISERROR([value to be checked to see if it is an error or not](#))

Example:

=ISERROR([0/0](#)) =TRUE

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Have a bunch of values and you need to check which ones are errors?
The **ISERROR Formula** in Excel is perfect for this!

There are a couple of interesting points to take note of the **ISERROR Formula**:

- The following are treated as errors by the **ISERROR Formula**
- #N/A
- #VALUE!
- #REF!
- #DIV/0!
- #NUM!
- #NAME?
- #NULL!

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the *ISERROR* function in a blank cell:**

=ISERROR(

| | C | D |
|----|---------|--------------------------------------|
| 8 | VALUE | =ISERROR(ISERROR(value) |
| 9 | #N/A | |
| 10 | #VALUE! | |
| 11 | #REF! | |
| 12 | #DIV/0! | |
| 13 | #NUM! | |
| 14 | #NAME? | |
| 15 | | |

STEP 2: The **ISERROR** arguments:

value

What is the value to be checked?


Select the cell containing the value you want to be checked if it is an error:

=ISERROR(C9)

| | C | D |
|----|---------|--------------|
| 8 | VALUE | |
| 9 | #N/A | =ISERROR(C9) |
| 10 | #VALUE! | |
| 11 | #REF! | |
| 12 | #DIV/0! | |
| 13 | #NUM! | |
| 14 | #NAME? | |
| 15 | | |


Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|---------|-----------------|
| 8 | VALUE | IS IT AN ERROR? |
| 9 | #N/A | TRUE |
| 10 | #VALUE! | |
| 11 | #REF! | |
| 12 | #DIV/0! | |
| 13 | #NUM! | |
| 14 | #NAME? | |
| 15 | | |



You can now see which ones are errors!

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|------------------------|
| 8 | VALUE | IS IT AN ERROR? |
| 9 | #N/A | TRUE |
| 10 | #VALUE! | TRUE |
| 11 | #REF! | TRUE |
| 12 | #DIV/0! | TRUE |
| 13 | #NUM! | TRUE |
| 14 | #NAME? | TRUE |
| 15 | | |
| 16 | | |



ISNUMBER

What does it do?

Checks if the cell value is numeric or not

Formula breakdown:

=ISNUMBER([value](#))

What it means:

=ISNUMBER([value to be checked to see if it is a number or not](#))

Example:

=ISNUMBER([12.5](#)) =TRUE

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Have a bunch of values and you need to check which ones are numbers? The **ISNUMBER Formula** in Excel is perfect for this!

There are a couple of interesting points to take note of the **ISNUMBER Formula**:

- Dates are also treated as numerical values, so the **ISNUMBER Formula** will return **TRUE**
- If the number is stored as text, then the **ISNUMBER Formula** will return **FALSE**

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the **ISNUMBER** function in a blank cell:

=ISNUMBER(

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 8 | VALUE | | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | -ISNUMBER(| |
| 10 | 12.50 | | ← Number stored as Text |
| 11 | How are you? | ISNUMBER('value') | |
| 12 | 12.50 | | |

STEP 2: The **ISNUMBER** arguments:

value

What is the value to be checked?

Select the cell containing the value you want to be checked

=ISNUMBER(C9)

| | C | D | F |
|----|--------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| 8 | VALUE | | |
| 9 | 1/11/85 | =ISNUMBER(C9) | |
| 10 | 12.50 | | ← Number stored as Text |
| 11 | How are you? | | |
| 12 | 12.50 | | |
| 13 | | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | F |
|----|--------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 8 | VALUE | IS IT A NUMBER? | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | TRUE | |
| 10 | 12.50 | | ← Number stored as Text |
| 11 | How are you? | | |
| 12 | 12.50 | | |
| 13 | | | |

You can now see which ones are the numbers!

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 8 | VALUE | IS IT A NUMBER? | |
| 9 | 1/11/85 | TRUE | |
| 10 | 12.50 | FALSE | <i><-- Number stored as Text</i> |
| 11 | How are you? | FALSE | |
| 12 | 12.50 | TRUE | |
| 13 | | | |

ISTEXT

What does it do?

Checks if the cell value is text or not

Formula breakdown:

=ISTEXT([value](#))

What it means:

=ISTEXT([value to be checked to see if it is a text or not](#))

Example:

=ISTEXT(["abc"](#)) =TRUE

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Have a bunch of values and you need to check which ones are text? The **ISTEXT Formula** in Excel is perfect for this!

There are a couple of interesting points to take note of the **ISTEXT Formula**:

- Dates are also treated as numerical values, so the **ISTEXT Formula** will return **FALSE**
- If a number is stored as text, then the **ISTEXT Formula** will return **TRUE**

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the **ISTEXT** function in a blank cell:

=ISTEXT(

| | E | F |
|----|--------------|---------------|
| 8 | VALUE | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | -ISTEXT(|
| 10 | 12.50 | |
| 11 | How are you? | ISTEXT(value) |
| 12 | 12.50 | |

c-- Number stored as Text

STEP 2: The **ISTEXT** arguments:

value

What is the value to be checked?

Select the cell containing the value you want to be checked:

=ISTEXT(C9)

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------------|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| 8 | VALUE | | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | =ISTEXT(C9) | |
| 10 | 12.50 | | <i><-- Number stored as Text</i> |
| 11 | How are you? | | |
| 12 | 12.50 | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------------|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| 8 | VALUE | IS IT A TEXT? | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | FALSE | |
| 10 | 12.50 | | <i><-- Number stored as Text</i> |
| 11 | How are you? | | |
| 12 | 12.50 | | |

You can now see which ones are text!

| | C | D | E |
|----|--------------|---------------|--------------------------------|
| 8 | VALUE | IS IT A TEXT? | |
| 9 | 4/11/85 | FALSE | |
| 10 | 12.50 | TRUE | <i>← Number stored as Text</i> |
| 11 | How are you? | TRUE | |
| 12 | 12.50 | FALSE | |
| 13 | | | |

TYPE

What does it do?

Returns the data type from a cell's value

Formula breakdown:

=TYPE([value](#))

What it means:

=TYPE([value to be checked for its data type](#))

Example:

=TYPE([FALSE](#)) =4

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Do you need to check the data type of your values? The **TYPE Formula** in Excel is perfect for this!

The **TYPE- Formula** checks for the following data types:

- 1 - number
- 2 - text
- 4 - logical value
- 16 - error value
- 64 - array

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the TYPE function in a blank cell:**

=TYPE(

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|-------------|
| 8 | VALUE | |
| 9 | 12.50 | =TYPE(|
| 10 | How are you? | |
| 11 | FALSE | TYPE(value) |
| 12 | #NAME? | |
| 13 | 1/01/10 | |

STEP 2: The **TYPE** arguments:

value

What is the value to get the data type from?


Select the cell containing the value:

=TYPE(C9)

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|-----------|
| 8 | VALUE | |
| 9 | 12.50 | =TYPE(C9) |
| 10 | How are you? | |
| 11 | FALSE | |
| 12 | #NAME? | |
| 13 | 1/01/10 | |


Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|------|
| 8 | VALUE | TYPE |
| 9 | 12.50 | 1 |
| 10 | How are you? | |
| 11 | FALSE | |
| 12 | #NAME? | |
| 13 | 1/01/10 | |
| 14 | | |



You now have your data types!

| | C | D |
|----|--------------|-------------|
| 8 | VALUE | TYPE |
| 9 | 12.50 | 1 |
| 10 | How are you? | 2 |
| 11 | FALSE | 4 |
| 12 | #NAME? | 16 |
| 13 | 1/01/10 | 1 |
| 14 | | |
| 15 | | |



OTHER FUNCTIONS

FV – Compound Interest

What does it do?

Calculates the compound interest of an initial investment

Formula breakdown:

=FV(rate, nper, pmt, [pv])

What it means:

=FV(interest rate, number of periods, periodic payment, initial amount)

Example:

=FV(0.1,2,0,1000*-1)=\$1210

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Say that you turn 18 years today (CONGRATS!) and you find out that your parents deposited an amount with their bank when you were born.

Now that you are 18 years old you can collect this money and go spend it all in one day!

How much would be available for you to spend?

Thankfully there is an easy way to calculate this with Excel's **FV formula!** **FV** stands for **Future Value**.

The future value (FV) is the value of a current asset at a specified date in the future based on an assumed rate of growth over time.

In our example below, we have the table of values that we need to get the compound interest or Future Value from:

(Change the NUMBER OF YEARS column to 18 to see the results on your 18th birthday)

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------------------|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | TOTAL AMOUNT WITH INTEREST |
| 9 | \$1,000.00 | 10% | 2 | |
| 10 | \$5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | |
| 11 | \$300.00 | 22% | 5 | |
| 12 | \$3,500.00 | 15% | 25 | |

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the *FV* function in a blank cell:

=FV(

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | |
| 9 | \$1,000.00 | 10% | 2 | =FV(|
| 10 | \$5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | |
| 11 | \$300.00 | 22% | 5 | FV(rate, nper, pmt, [pv], [type]) |
| 12 | \$3,500.00 | 15% | 7.5 | |

STEP 2: The **FV** arguments:

rate

What is the rate of the interest?

Select the cell containing the interest rate (make sure that this is in a percentage):

=FV(B9,

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | |
| 9 | \$1,000.00 | 10% | 2 | =FV(B9, |
| 10 | \$5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | |
| 11 | \$300.00 | 22% | 5 | FV(rate, nper, pmt, [pv], [type]) |
| 12 | \$3,500.00 | 15% | 7.5 | |

nper

How many periods?

Select the cell containing the number of years:

=FV(B9, C9,

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | |
| 9 | \$1,000.00 | 10% | 2 | =FV(B9, C9, |
| 10 | \$5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | |
| 11 | \$300.00 | 22% | 5 | FV(rate, nper, pmt, [pv], [type]) |
| 12 | \$3,500.00 | 15% | 25 | |

pmt

What is the periodic payment?

We have no periodic payment, only an initial amount, so let us put in 0:

=FV(B9, C9, 0,

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | |
| 9 | \$1,000.00 | 10% | 2 | =FV(B9, C9, 0, |
| 10 | \$5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | |
| 11 | \$300.00 | 22% | 5 | FV(rate, nper, pmt, [pv], [type]) |
| 12 | \$3,500.00 | 15% | 25 | |

pv

What is the initial amount?

PV stands for present value, the initial amount. We need to change this to a negative value by multiplying -1.

The reason why we need this as a negative value as Excel treats this as "money out" for your investment.

=FV(B9, C9, 0, A9 * -1)

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | |
| 9 | \$1,000.00 | 10% | 2 | =FV(B9,C9,0,A9* -1) |
| 10 | \$5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | |
| 11 | \$300.00 | 22% | 5 | |
| 12 | \$3,500.00 | 15% | 25 | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

You now have all of the compound interest results! GO OUT & SPEND!

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------------------|---|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | TOTAL AMOUNT WITH INTEREST | |
| 9 | \$1,000.00 | 10% | 2 | \$1,210.00 | |
| 10 | \$5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | \$7,401.77 | |
| 11 | \$300.00 | 22% | 5 | \$810.81 | |
| 12 | \$3,500.00 | 15% | 25 | \$115,216.33 | |
| 13 | | | | | |

FV – Monthly Investment

What does it do?

Calculates the compound interest when you have monthly contributions

Formula breakdown:

=FV(rate, nper, pmt, [pv])

What it means:

=FV(interest rate, number of periods, periodic payment, initial amount)

Example:

=FV(0.1/12,2*12,500,0) * -1 =\$13,223.46

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Computing the compound interest of an initial investment is easy for a fixed number of years. But let's add an additional challenge.

What if you are also putting in **monthly contributions** to your investment? Now that's a lot more challenging to compute now!

How much would be available for you at the end of your investment?

Thankfully there is an easy way to calculate this with Excel's **FV formula!** **FV** stands for **Future Value**.

In our example below, we have the table of values that we need to get the compound interest or Future Value from:

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | MONTHLY CONTRIBUTIONS | TOTAL AMOUNT WITH INTEREST |
| 9 | \$ - | 10% | 2 | \$ 500.00 | |
| 10 | \$ 5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | \$ 1,000.00 | |
| 11 | \$ 1,000.00 | 7% | 5 | \$ 50.00 | |
| 12 | \$ 3,500.00 | 15% | 25 | \$ 120.00 | |

There are two important concepts we need to use since we are using monthly contributions:

- Since our interest rate is the annual rate, we will have to **divide it by 12** to make it monthly
- We will need to convert our number of years into number of months by **multiplying it by 12**

STEP 1: We need to **enter the FV function in a blank cell:**

=FV(

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----|-----------------------------------|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | MONTHLY CONTRIBUTIONS | | |
| 9 | \$ - | 10% | 2 | \$ 500.00 | -FV | |
| 10 | \$ 5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | \$ 1,000.00 | | |
| 11 | \$ 300.00 | 22% | 5 | \$ 50.00 | | FV(rate, nper, pmt, [pv], [type]) |
| 12 | \$ 3,500.00 | 15% | 25 | \$ 120.00 | | |

STEP 2: The FV arguments:

rate

What is the rate of the interest?

Select the cell containing the interest rate and divide it by 12 to get the monthly interest rate (make sure that this is in a percentage):

=FV(B9/12,

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | MONTHLY CONTRIBUTIONS | | |
| 9 | \$ - | 10% | 2 | \$ 500.00 | FV(B9/12, | |
| 10 | \$ 5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | \$ 1,000.00 | | |
| 11 | \$ 300.00 | 22% | 5 | \$ 50.00 | | FV(rate, nper, pmt, [pv], [type]) |
| 12 | \$ 3,500.00 | 15% | 25 | \$ 120.00 | | |

nper

How many periods?

Select the cell containing the number of years and multiply it by 12 to get the number of months:

=FV(B9/12, C9*12,

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | MONTHLY CONTRIBUTIONS | | |
| 9 | \$ | 10% | 2 | \$ 500.00 | =FV(D9/12,C9*12, | |
| 10 | \$ 5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | \$ 1,000.00 | | |
| 11 | \$ 300.00 | 22% | 5 | \$ 50.00 | FV(rate, nper, pmt, [pv], [type]) | |
| 12 | \$ 3,500.00 | 15% | 25 | \$ 120.00 | | |

pmt

What is the periodic payment?

Select the cell that contains your monthly contribution (this is your periodic payment):

=FV(B9/12, C9*12, D9,

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | MONTHLY CONTRIBUTIONS | | |
| 9 | \$ - | 10% | 2 | \$ 500.00 | FV(B9/12,C9*12,D9, | |
| 10 | \$ 5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | \$ 1,000.00 | | |
| 11 | \$ 300.00 | 22% | 5 | \$ 50.00 | FV(rate, nper, pmt, [pv], [type]) | |
| 12 | \$ 3,500.00 | 15% | 25 | \$ 120.00 | | |

pv

What is the initial amount?

PV stands for present value, the initial amount. Multiply the entire result by -1.

=FV(B9/12, C9*12, D9, A9) * -1

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | MONTHLY CONTRIBUTIONS | | |
| 9 | \$ - | 10% | 2 | \$ 500.00 | =FV(B9/12,C9*12,D9,A9)*1 | |
| 10 | \$ 5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | \$ 1,000.00 | | |
| 11 | \$ 300.00 | 22% | 5 | \$ 50.00 | | |
| 12 | \$ 3,500.00 | 15% | 25 | \$ 120.00 | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

You now have all of the compound interest results!

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|---|
| 8 | INITIAL AMOUNT | INTEREST RATE | NUMBER OF YEARS | MONTHLY CONTRIBUTIONS | TOTAL AMOUNT WITH INTEREST | |
| 9 | \$ - | 10% | 2 | \$ 500.00 | \$13,223.46 | |
| 10 | \$ 5,000.00 | 4% | 10 | \$ 1,000.00 | \$154,703.97 | |
| 11 | \$ 300.00 | 22% | 5 | \$ 50.00 | \$6,277.01 | |
| 12 | \$ 3,500.00 | 15% | 25 | \$ 120.00 | \$534,627.97 | |

EXCEL 2019

CONCAT

What does it do?

Concatenates a list together without a delimiter

Formula breakdown:

=CONCAT(text1, [text2], ...)

What it means:

=CONCAT(first text to combine, [second text to combine], ...)

Example:

=CONCAT("Hello", " ", "World") ="Hello World"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Do you want to combine text or a range of cells together easily?
The **CONCAT Formula** in Excel will do this for you in a flash!

It will simply combine the text you specify together into a single text.

STEP 1: We need to enter the *CONCAT* function in a blank cell:

=CONCAT(

| | L | D | E | F |
|----|---------|--------|----------|--------------------|
| 8 | TEXT 1 | TEXT 2 | TEXT 3 | |
| 9 | Combine | us | together | =CONCAT(|
| 10 | Hello | | World | |
| 11 | Hi | | | CONCAT(text1, ...) |

STEP 2: The **CONCAT** arguments:

text1, ...

Which cells do you want to combine together?


Select the range of cells that you want to combine together

=CONCAT(C9:E9)

| | L | D | E | F |
|----|---------|--------|----------|----------------|
| 8 | TEXT 1 | TEXT 2 | TEXT 3 | |
| 9 | Combine | us | together | =CONCAT(C9:E9) |
| 10 | Hello | | World | |
| 11 | Hi | | | |
| 12 | | | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------|--------|----------|------------------|
| 8 | TEXT 1 | TEXT 2 | TEXT 3 | COMBINED TEXT |
| 9 | Combine | us | together | Combineustgether |
| 10 | Hello | | World | |
| 11 | Hi | | | |



You now have your combined text!

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------|--------|----------|------------------|---|
| 8 | TEXT 1 | TEXT 2 | TEXT 3 | COMBINED TEXT | |
| 9 | Combine | us | together | Combineustgether | |
| 10 | Hello | | World | HelloWorld | |
| 11 | Hi | | | Hi | |
| 12 | | | | | |
| 13 | | | | | |

If we were to do this the old way it would look something like this using the CONCATENATE FORMULA:

=CONCATENATE(C9,D9,E9)

It is way easier using the **CONCAT** Formula!

IFS

What does it do?

Checks multiple conditions and returns the value of the first TRUE condition

Formula breakdown:

=IFS(logical_test1, value_if_true1, [logical_test2, value_if_true2], ...)

What it means:

=IFS(first condition to check, value to return, [succeeding conditions to check], ...)

Example:

=IFS(10000<8456, 13%, 10000<15874, 18%, 10000>=15874, 22%)
=18%

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

If you have multiple logical conditions to check, instead of creating Nested IF Formulas, we can use **Excel's IFS Formula!** It allows us to specify multiple conditions to check, then the **IFS Formula** will look for the first condition that gets satisfied!

Let us try it out on a simple tax table, then we will create an **IFS Formula** that will simulate the exact same logic of the table!

STEP 1: We need to **enter the IFS function in a blank cell:**

=IFS(

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|---|--------------|---|---|
| | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | | ENTER INCOME | \$10,000.00 | |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | | | | |
| 10 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | TAX RATE | =IFS(| |
| 11 | \$ 15,871.00 | 22% | | | IFS(logical_test1, value_if_true1, ...) | |
| 12 | | | | | | |
| 13 | | | | | | |

STEP 2: The **IFS** arguments:

logical_test1, value_if_true1

What is the first condition and value to return if the condition is met?

Let us start from the minimum value of the tax table. If the income is less than \$8456, then the tax rate is 13%

=IFS(G8<8456, 13%,

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|---|--------------|---|---|
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | | ENTER INCOME | \$10,000.00 | |
| 9 | \$ - | 11% | | | | |
| 10 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | TAX RATE | =IFS(G8<8456, 13%, | |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | | =IFS(logical_test1, value_if_true1, [logical_test2, value_if_true2], ...) | |

logical_test2, value_if_true2

What is the second condition and value to return if the condition is met?

Going to the second row, if the income is less than \$15874, then the tax rate is 18%

=IFS(G8<8456, 13%, G8<15874, 18%,

| | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|---|--------------|--|---|---|---------------------------------|
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | | ENTER INCOME | \$10,000.00 | | | |
| 9 | \$ - | 11% | | | | | | LISTEN TO MY EX MIDFAST SHOW |
| 10 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | TAX RATE | =IFS(G8<8456, 13%, G8<15874, 18%, | | | |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | | =IFS(logical_test1, value_if_true1, [logical_test2, value_if_true2], [logical_test3, value_if_true3], ...) | | | |

logical_test3, value_if_true3

What is the third condition and value to return if the condition is met?

Going to the last row, if the income is greater than or equal to \$15874, then the tax rate is 22%

=IFS(G8<8456, 13%, G8<15874, 18%, G8>=15874, 22%)

| | C | D | E | F | G | H | I |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|---|--------------|---|---|---|
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | | ENTER INCOME | \$10,000.00 | | |
| 9 | \$ - | 11% | | | | | |
| 10 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | TAX RATE | =IFS(G8<8456, 13%, G8<15874, 18%, G8>=15874, 22%) | | |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | | | | |

You now have your correct tax rate!

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|--|-----------------|---|---------------------|-------------|
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | | ENTER INCOME | \$10,000.00 |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | | | |
| 10 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | TAX RATE | 18% |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | | |
| 12 | | | | | |

If we were to do this the old way it would look something like this using Nested IF Formulas:

=IF(G8<8456, 13%, IF(G8<15874, 18%, 22%))

It is much neater & easier to read using the **IFS Formula**, especially if you have lots of conditions!

MAXIFS

What does it do?

Gets the max value based on the cells that matches certain criteria

Formula breakdown:

=MAXIFS(max_range, criteria_range1, criteria1, ...)

What it means:

=MAXIFS(cells that contains the values, first set of cells to base the filtering on, filtering condition of first set of cells, ...)

Example:

=MAXIFS(D9:D13, C9:C13, "John") = \$3,500

i.e. John's largest sale was \$3,500

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

If you need to get the max value based on certain criteria, the **MAXIFS Formula** will do this for you in Excel!

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the **MAXIFS** function in a blank cell:

=MAXIFS(

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|---|--------------|----------|---|---------|---|
| 8 | | SALES PERSON | SALES | | | |
| 9 | | John | \$ 1,500 | | MAXIFS(| |
| 10 | | Bryan | \$ 2,000 | | | |
| 11 | | John | \$ 3,500 | | | |
| 12 | | Bryan | \$ 4,000 | | | |
| 13 | | John | \$ 3,000 | | | |
| 14 | | | | | | |

STEP 2: The **MAXIFS** arguments:

max_range

What is the range that contains the values to get the max value from?

Select the cells containing the sales numbers that you want to get the maximum value from:

=MAXIFS(D9:D13,

| | E | D | F | G | H |
|----|---|---------------------|--------------|-----------------|---|
| 8 | | SALES PERSON | SALES | | |
| 9 | | John | \$ 1,500 | =MAXIFS(D9:D13, | |
| 10 | | Bryan | \$ 2,000 | | |
| 11 | | John | \$ 3,500 | | |
| 12 | | Bryan | \$ 4,000 | | |
| 13 | | John | \$ 3,000 | | |
| 14 | | | | | |

MAXIFS(max_range, criteria_range1, criteria1, [criteria_range2, criteria2], ...)

criteria_range1

What is the range that contains the values for filtering?

Select the cells containing the sales person names:

=MAXIFS(D9:D13, C9:C13,

| | E | D | F | G | H |
|----|---|---------------------|--------------|-------------------------|---|
| 8 | | SALES PERSON | SALES | | |
| 9 | | John | \$ 1,500 | =MAXIFS(D9:D13, C9:C13, | |
| 10 | | Bryan | \$ 2,000 | | |
| 11 | | John | \$ 3,500 | | |
| 12 | | Bryan | \$ 4,000 | | |
| 13 | | John | \$ 3,000 | | |
| 14 | | | | | |

MAXIFS(max_range, criteria_range1, criteria1, [criteria_range2, criteria2], ...)

criteria1

What is your filtering criteria?

Since we want to filter the sales numbers for John, type in "John":

=MAXIFS(D9:D13, C9:C13, "John")

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------------------|--------------------------------------|---|---|
| 8 | SALES PERSON | | | |
| 9 | John | $\$$ =MAXIFS(D9:D13, C9:C13, "John") | | |
| 10 | Bryan | $\$$ | | |
| 11 | John | $\$$ 3,500 | | |
| 12 | Bryan | $\$$ 4,000 | | |
| 13 | John | $\$$ 3,000 | | |

You now have John's largest sales number!

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------------------|--------------|---|--------------------------|
| 8 | SALES PERSON | SALES | | MAX SALES OF JOHN |
| 9 | John | $\$$ 1,500 | | $\$$ 3,500 |
| 10 | Bryan | $\$$ 2,000 | | |
| 11 | John | $\$$ 3,500 | | |
| 12 | Bryan | $\$$ 4,000 | | |
| 13 | John | $\$$ 3,000 | | |

MINIFS

What does it do?

Gets the minimum value based on the cells that matches certain criteria

Formula breakdown:

=MINIFS(min_range, criteria_range1, criteria1, ...)

What it means:

=MINIFS(cells that contains the values, first set of cells to base the filtering on, filtering condition of first set of cells, ...)

Example:

=MINIFS(D9:D13,C9:C13,"John") = \$1,500

i.e. John's smallest sale was \$1,500

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

If you need to get the minimum value based on certain criteria, the **MINIFS** Formula will do this for you in Excel!

STEP 1: We need to enter the **MINIFS** function in a blank cell:

=MINIFS(

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|--------------|----------|---|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| 8 | SALES PERSON | | | =MINIFS(| | |
| 9 | John | \$ 1,500 | | | | |
| 10 | Dryan | \$ 100 | | | | |
| 11 | John | \$ 3,500 | | | | |
| 12 | Ryan | \$ 4,000 | | | | |
| 13 | John | \$ 3,000 | | | | |

MINIFS(min_range, criteria_range1, criteria2, ...)

STEP 2: The **MINIFS** arguments:

min_range

What is the range that contains the values to get the min value from?

Select the cells containing the sales numbers that you want to get the minimum value from:

=MINIFS(D9:D13,

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|--------------|----------|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | SALES PERSON | SALES | | | | |
| 9 | John | \$ 1,500 | | | | |
| 10 | Bryan | \$ 100 | | | | |
| 11 | John | \$ 3,500 | | | | |
| 12 | Bryan | \$ 4,000 | | | | |
| 13 | John | \$ 3,000 | | | | |

`=MINIFS(D9:D13,`

MINIFS(min range, criteria range1, criteria1, [criteria range2, criteria2], ...)

criteria_range1

What is the range that contains the values for filtering?

Select the cells containing the sales person names:

`=MINIFS(D9:D13, C9:C13,`

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|--------------|----------|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | SALES PERSON | SALES | | | | |
| 9 | John | \$ 1,500 | | | | |
| 10 | Bryan | \$ 100 | | | | |
| 11 | John | \$ 3,500 | | | | |
| 12 | Bryan | \$ 4,000 | | | | |
| 13 | John | \$ 3,000 | | | | |

`MINIFS(D9:D13,C9:C13,`

MINIFS(min_range, criteria_range1, criteria1, [criteria_range2, criteria2], ...)

criteria1

What is your filtering criteria?

Since we want to filter the sales numbers for John, type in "John":

`=MINIFS(D9:D13, C9:C13, "John")`

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------------------|-------------------------------|---|---|
| 8 | SALES PERSON | | | |
| 9 | John | =MINIFS(D9:D13,C9:C13,"John") | | |
| 10 | Bryan | | | |
| 11 | John | \$ 3,500 | | |
| 12 | Bryan | \$ 4,000 | | |
| 13 | John | \$ 3,000 | | |

You now have John's smallest sales number!

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------------------|--------------|---|--------------------------|
| 8 | SALES PERSON | SALES | | MIN SALES OF JOHN |
| 9 | John | \$ 1,500 | | \$ 1,500 |
| 10 | Bryan | \$ 100 | | |
| 11 | John | \$ 3,500 | | |
| 12 | Bryan | \$ 4,000 | | |
| 13 | John | \$ 3,000 | | |

SWITCH

What does it do?

Matches multiple values and returns the first value that has a match

Formula breakdown:

=SWITCH(expression, value1, result1, [value2 / default, result2], ...)

What it means:

=SWITCH(value to check, value to match against, result to return, [succeeding values to match or the default value if nothing gets matched], ...)

Example:

=SWITCH(3, 1, "Bad", 2, "Average", 3, "Great", "Unknown")="Great"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

If you have multiple values to check, we can use **Excel's SWITCH Formula!** It allows us to specify multiple values to check, then the **SWITCH Formula** will look for the first value that gets matched!

Let us try it out on a simple ratings table (e.g. 1 = Bad, 2 = Average, 3 = Great), then we will create a **SWITCH Formula** that will simulate the exact same logic of the table!

STEP 1: We need to **enter the SWITCH function in a blank cell:**

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with a ratings table on the left and a formula being entered into a cell on the right. The table has columns 'RATING' and 'DESCRIPTION' with values 1 (Bad), 2 (Average), and 3 (Great). The formula bar shows '=SWITCH(' and a tooltip with the syntax: SWITCH(expression, value1, result1, [default or value2, result2], ...)

| RATING | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|-------------|
| 1 | Bad |
| 2 | Average |
| 3 | Great |

ENTER RATING: 3

DESCRIPTION: =SWITCH(

SWITCH(expression, value1, result1, [default or value2, result2], ...)

STEP 2: The **SWITCH** arguments:

expression

What is the value to check?

Select the cell containing the rating that you want to translate to the correct description

The screenshot shows the same Excel spreadsheet as before, but now the formula bar shows '=SWITCH(G8,' and the tooltip is updated to: SWITCH(expression, value1, result1, [default or value2, result2], ...). The cell G8, which contains the rating '3', is highlighted in blue.

| RATING | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|-------------|
| 1 | Bad |
| 2 | Average |
| 3 | Great |

ENTER RATING: 3

DESCRIPTION: =SWITCH(G8,

SWITCH(expression, value1, result1, [default or value2, result2], ...)

value1, result1

What is the first lookup value and value to return if it is matched?

Let us start from the first value of the rating table. If the value is 1, then the description is "Bad"

```
=SWITCH(G8, 1, "Bad"
```

| RATING | DESCRIPTION |
|--------|-------------|
| 1 | Bad |
| 2 | Average |
| 3 | Great |

value2, result2

What is the second lookup value and value to return if it is matched?

Let us start from the second value of the rating table. If the value is 2, then the description is "Average"

```
=SWITCH(G8, 1, "Bad", 2, "Average",
```

value3, result3

What is the third lookup value and value to return if it is matched?

Let us start from the third value of the rating table. If the value is 3, then the description is "Great"

```
=SWITCH(G8, 1, "Bad", 2, "Average", 3, "Great",
```

| RATING | DESCRIPTION | ENTER RATING | |
|--------|-------------|--------------|--|
| 1 | Bad | | |
| 2 | Average | | |
| 3 | Great | | |

DESCRIPTION =SWITCH(G8, 1, "Bad", 2, "Average", 3, "Great",)

SWITCH(expression, value1, result1, [value2, result2], [value3, result3], [default, or_value4], result5, [

default

What is the default value to return if nothing gets matched?

We want to show the value "Unknown", if an unknown rating is specified.

=SWITCH(G8, 1, "Bad", 2, "Average", 3, "Great", "Unknown")

| RATING | DESCRIPTION | ENTER RATING | |
|--------|-------------|--------------|--|
| 1 | Bad | 3 | |
| 2 | Average | | |
| 3 | Great | | |

DESCRIPTION =SWITCH(G8, 1, "Bad", 2, "Average", 3, "Great", "Unknown")

You now have your correct rating description!

| RATING | DESCRIPTION | ENTER RATING | |
|--------|-------------|--------------|-------|
| 1 | Bad | | |
| 2 | Average | | Great |
| 3 | Great | | |

Let us try an unknown rating (40) and see the resulting description:

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------------|--------------------|---------|---------------------|---------|
| 8 | RATING | DESCRIPTION | | ENTER RATING | 40 |
| 9 | | 1 | Bad | | |
| 10 | | 2 | Average | DESCRIPTION | Unknown |
| 11 | | 3 | Great | | |
| 12 | | | | | |

If we were to do this the old way it would look something like this using Nested IF Formulas:

=IF(G8= 1, "Bad", IF(G8=2, "Average", IF(G8=3, "Great", "Unknown")))

It is way easier using the **SWITCH Formula!**

TEXTJOIN

What does it do?

Concatenates a list with a specified delimiter

Formula breakdown:

=TEXTJOIN(**delimiter**, **ignore_empty**, **text1**, ...)

What it means:

=TEXTJOIN(**the delimiter**, **ignore empty cells in combining text**, **first text/range to combine**, ...)

Example:

=TEXTJOIN(", ", **TRUE**, "Hello", "World") ="Hello,World"

Exercise Workbook:

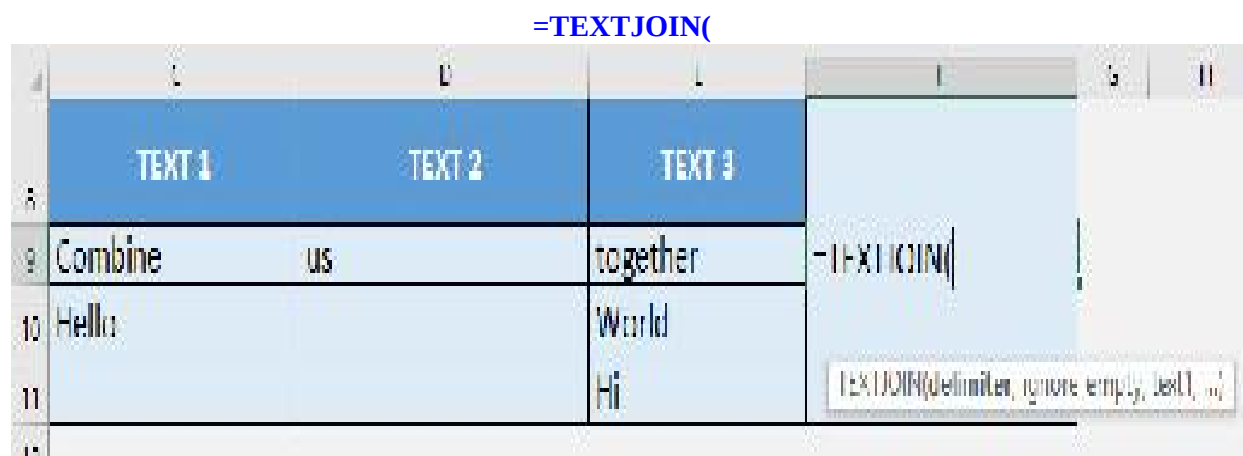
[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Do you want to combine text or a range of cells together easily? The **TEXTJOIN Formula** in Excel will do this for you in a flash! The **TEXTJOIN Formula** was introduced in Excel 2016.

It can even let you specify a **delimiter** to use to combine the text together and **ignore empty cells** for you!

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the **TEXTJOIN** function in a blank cell:



STEP 2: The **TEXTJOIN** arguments:

delimiter

What is the delimiter to use in combining the text?

We want to have the text combined together and separated by a comma:

=TEXTJOIN(",",

| | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|---------|--------|----------|----------------|---|---|
| 8 | TEXT 1 | TEXT 2 | TEXT 3 | | | |
| 9 | Combine | US | together | =TEXTJOIN(",") | | |
| 10 | Hello | | World | | | |
| 11 | | | Hi | | | |
| 12 | | | | | | |

TEXTJOIN(delimiter, ignore empty, text1, [text2], ...)

TRUE ignore empty cells
FALSE include empty cells

ignore_empty

Do you want to ignore the empty cells?

Let us set this to *TRUE* to ignore the empty cells when combining them together:

=TEXTJOIN(",", TRUE,

| | C | D | E | F | G | H | I |
|----|---------|--------|----------|----------------------|---|---|-------------|
| 8 | TEXT 1 | TEXT 2 | TEXT 3 | | | | LIST POI |
| 9 | Combine | US | together | =TEXTJOIN(",", TRUE, | | | |
| 10 | Hello | | World | | | | |
| 11 | | | Hi | | | | |

TEXTJOIN(delimiter, ignore empty, text1, [text2], [text3], ...)

text1, ...

Which cells do you want to combine together?


Select the range of cells that you want to combine together

=TEXTJOIN(",", TRUE, C9:E9)

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------|--------|----------|---------------------------|
| 8 | TEXT 1 | TEXT 2 | TEXT 3 | |
| 9 | Combine | us | together | =TEXTJOIN(";",TRUE,C9:F9) |
| 10 | Hello | | World | |
| 11 | | | Hi | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------|--------|----------|---------------------|
| 8 | TEXT 1 | TEXT 2 | TEXT 3 | COMBINED TEXT |
| 9 | Combine | us | together | Combine,us,together |
| 10 | Hello | | World | |
| 11 | | | Hi | |



You now have your combined text!

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------|--------|----------|---------------------|
| 8 | TEXT 1 | TEXT 2 | TEXT 3 | COMBINED TEXT |
| 9 | Combine | us | together | Combine,us,together |
| 10 | Hello | | World | Hello,World |
| 11 | | | Hi | Hi |

If we were to do this the old way it would look something like this using the CONCATENATE FORMULA:

=CONCATENATE(C9,"",D9,"",E9)

And it does not even have the capability to ignore empty cells. It is way easier using the **TEXTJOIN Formula!**

OFFICE 365 (AS OF SEPTEMBER 2018)

FILTER

What does it do?

Filters a table array based on the filtering condition given

Formula breakdown:

=FILTER(array, include, [if_empty])

What it means:

=FILTER(data to be filtered, the filtering condition, [value to display if nothing gets matched])

Example:

=FILTER(C9:D14,D9:D14>0.33,"") = Shows all the data that has a tax rate > 33%

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Did you know that you can now filter your table data with an Excel Formula? Yes you can! It is definitely possible now with **Excel's FILTER Formula**.

We have a tax table that we want to dynamically filter with a given rate.

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the *FILTER* function in a blank cell:

=FILTER(

| | | | | |
|----|--|-----------------|--|-----------------|
| | | | | |
| | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | ENTER TAX RATE FILTER (GREATER THAN) | |
| 8 | \$ - | 13% | | |
| 9 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE |
| 10 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | =FILTER(| |
| 11 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | FILTER(array, include, [if_empty]) | |
| 12 | \$ 87,458.00 | 39% | | |
| 13 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | |
| 14 | | | | |
| 15 | | | | |
| 16 | | | | |
| 17 | | | | |

STEP 2: The **FILTER** arguments:

array

What is the data to be filtered?

Select the cells containing the tax data, do not include the headers:

=FILTER(C9:D14,

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|---|---------------------------------------|----------|
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | | ENTER TAX RATE FILTER (GREATER THAN) | |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | | | |
| 10 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | =FILTER(C9:D14, | |
| 12 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | FILTER(array, include, [if_empty]) | |
| 13 | \$ 87,458.00 | 39% | | | |
| 14 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | | |
| 15 | | | | | |
| 16 | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | |

include

What is your filtering condition?

We want to filter the tax rate that is greater than the specified rate. Type in the condition as the tax rate column > the specific tax rate.

=FILTER(C9:D14, D9:D14>G8

| | C | D | F | F | G |
|----|---------------------------------------|------------|----------|---------------------------------------|----------|
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | | TAX RATE | ENTER TAX RATE FILTER (GREATER THAN) | |
| 9 | \$ | | 13% | | |
| 10 | \$ | 8,456.00 | 18% | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE |
| 11 | \$ | 15,874.00 | 22% | =FILTER(C9:D14,D9:D14>G8, | |
| 12 | \$ | 36,897.00 | 30% | FILTER(array,include,[if_empty]) | |
| 13 | \$ | 87,458.00 | 30% | | |
| 14 | \$ | 141,560.00 | 45% | | |
| 15 | | | | | |
| 16 | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | |

[if_empty]

What is the value to display in case nothing gets matched?

Just place an empty string to be displayed if nothing gets matched.

=FILTER(C9:D14, D9:D14>G8, "")

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------------------------------------|-----|----------|---------------------------------------|----------|
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | | TAX RATE | ENTER TAX RATE FILTER (GREATER THAN) | |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | | | |
| 10 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | =FILTER(C9:D14,D9:D14>G8,"") | |
| 12 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | | |
| 13 | \$ 87,458.00 | 39% | | | |
| 14 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | | |
| 15 | | | | | |
| 16 | | | | | |

Try it out now with different values and see it get filtered magically!

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|--|-----------------|---|--|-----------------|
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | | ENTER TAX RATE FILTER (GREATER THAN) | 15% |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | | | |
| 10 | \$ 8,156.00 | 18% | | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE |
| 11 | \$ 15,871.00 | 22% | | \$ 8,156.00 | 18% |
| 12 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% |
| 13 | \$ 87,458.00 | 39% | | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% |
| 14 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | \$ 87,458.00 | 39% |
| 15 | | | | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% |
| 16 | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | |

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|--|------------|-----------------|---|----------------|
| | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | | TAX RATE | ENTER TAX RATE FILTER (GREATER THAN) | 33% |
| 0 | \$ | - | 17% | | |
| 10 | \$ | 8,456.00 | 18% | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... TAX RATE | |
| 1 | \$ | 15,874.00 | 22% | \$ | 87,458.00 39% |
| 2 | \$ | 36,897.00 | 30% | \$ | 141,569.00 45% |
| 3 | \$ | 87,458.00 | 39% | | |
| 4 | \$ | 141,569.00 | 45% | | |
| 5 | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | |

RANDARRAY

What does it do?

Creates an array of random numbers between 0 and 1

Formula breakdown:

=RANDARRAY([rows], [columns])

What it means:

=RANDARRAY(number of rows, number of columns)

Example:

=RANDARRAY(6,2)

=Random numbers in a table of 6 rows and 2 columns

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Ever wondered how to create an array of random numbers easily? It is definitely possible now with **Excel's RANDARRAY Formula**.

We want to fill up a table of 6 rows and 2 columns with random numbers between 0 and 1.

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the RANDARRAY function in a blank cell:**

=RANDARRAY(

| | C | D |
|----|------------------------------|--------------|
| 8 | RANDOM VALUE | RANDOM VALUE |
| 9 | =RANDARRAY(| |
| | RANDARRAY([rows], [columns]) | |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | | |
| 12 | | |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |

STEP 2: The **RANDARRAY** arguments:

[rows]

How many rows are going to be populated?

We want 6 so input that as the number of rows:

=RANDARRAY(6,

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------------------------|--------------|---|
| 8 | RANDOM VALUE | RANDOM VALUE | |
| 9 | =RANDARRAY(6, | | |
| | RANDARRAY([rows], [columns]) | | |
| 10 | | | |
| 11 | | | |
| 12 | | | |
| 13 | | | |
| 14 | | | |
| 15 | | | |

[columns]

How many columns are going to be populated?

We want 2 so input that as the number of columns

`=RANDARRAY(6, 2)`

| | C | D |
|----|------------------|--------------|
| 8 | RANDOM VALUE | RANDOM VALUE |
| 9 | =RANDARRAY(6, 2) | |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | | |
| 12 | | |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |

Now you have your random array of values!

| | C | D | E |
|----|---------------------|---------------------|---|
| 8 | RANDOM VALUE | RANDOM VALUE | |
| 9 | 0.35 | 0.16 | |
| 10 | 0.37 | 0.38 | |
| 11 | 0.25 | 0.32 | |
| 12 | 0.82 | 0.91 | |
| 13 | 0.51 | 0.91 | |
| 14 | 0.12 | 0.74 | |

SEQUENCE

What does it do?

Creates an array of sequential numbers

Formula breakdown:

=SEQUENCE(rows, [columns], [start], [step])

What it means:

=SEQUENCE(number of rows, [number of columns], [starting number], [increment per number])

Example:

=SEQUENCE(6,2,0,2)

=Even numbers starting from 0 in a table of 6 rows and 2 columns

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Ever wondered how to create an array of sequential numbers easily? It is definitely possible now with **Excel's SEQUENCE Formula**.

We want to fill up a table of 6 rows and 2 columns with even numbers starting from 0.

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the SEQUENCE function in a blank cell:**

=SEQUENCE(

| | C | D |
|----|--|-------|
| 8 | VALUE | VALUE |
| 9 | =SEQUENCE(| |
| | SEQUENCE(rows, [columns], [start], [step]) | |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | | |
| 12 | | |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |
| 15 | | |

STEP 2: The SEQUENCE arguments:

rows

How many rows are going to be populated?

We want 6 so input that as the number of rows.

=SEQUENCE(6,

| | C | D |
|----|--|-------|
| 8 | VALUE | VALUE |
| 9 | =SEQUENCE(6, | |
| | SEQUENCE(rows, [columns], [start], [step]) | |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | | |
| 12 | | |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |

[columns]

How many columns are going to be populated?

We want 2 so input that as the number of columns.

=SEQUENCE(6, 2,

| | C | D |
|----|--|-------|
| 8 | VALUE | VALUE |
| 9 | =SEQUENCE(6, 2, | |
| | SEQUENCE(rows, [columns], [start], [step]) | |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | | |
| 12 | | |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |

[start]

What is the starting number?

We want the first number to be 0.

=SEQUENCE(6, 2, 0,

| | C | D |
|----|--|-------|
| 8 | VALUE | VALUE |
| 9 | =SEQUENCE(6, 2, 0, | |
| | SEQUENCE(rows, [columns], [start], [step]) | |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | | |
| 12 | | |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |

[step]

What is the interval for each succeeding number?

We want even numbers, so the increment should be 2 for each succeeding number.

=SEQUENCE(6, 2, 0, 2)

| | C | D |
|----|-----------------------|-------|
| 8 | VALUE | VALUE |
| 9 | =SEQUENCE(6, 2, 0, 2) | |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | | |
| 12 | | |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |
| 15 | | |

Now you have your even numbers filled up!

| | C | D |
|----|-------|-------|
| 8 | VALUE | VALUE |
| 9 | 0 | 2 |
| 10 | 4 | 6 |
| 11 | 8 | 10 |
| 12 | 12 | 14 |
| 13 | 16 | 18 |
| 14 | 20 | 22 |

SORT

What does it do?

Sorts a table based on a column and order specified

Formula breakdown:

=SORT(array, [sort_index], [sort_order])

What it means:

=SORT(data to be sorted, [which column to be used for sorting], [ascending or descending order])

Example:

=SORT(C9:D14, 2, -1)

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Did you know that you can now sort your table data with an Excel Formula? Yes you can! It is definitely possible now with **Excel's SORT Formula**. It is a new formula introduced in **Excel 2019**!

We have a tax table that we want to sort by the tax rate in a **descending order**.

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the **SORT** function in a blank cell:

=SORT(

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------------------------------------|-----|----------|---|---|
| 7 | | | | SORTED TABLE | |
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | | TAX RATE | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | | =SORT(| |
| 10 | \$ 87,458.00 | 30% | | SORT(array, [sort_index], [sort_order], [by_col]) | |
| 11 | \$ 15,871.00 | 22% | | | |
| 12 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | | |
| 13 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | | |
| 14 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | | |

STEP 2: The **SORT** arguments:

array

What is the data to be sorted?

Select the cells containing the tax data, do not include the headers:

=SORT(C9:D14,

| | F | G | F | G |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|---|----------|
| 7 | | | SORTED TABLE | |
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | =SORT(C9:D14, | |
| 10 | \$ 87,458.00 | 39% | SORT(array, [sort_index], [sort_order], [by_col]) | |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | |
| 12 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | |
| 13 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | |
| 14 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | |

[sort_index]

What is the column to be used for sorting?

We specify the column number here. Since the tax rate column is the second column, place in 2.

=SORT(C9:D14, 2,

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|---|---|----------|
| 7 | | | | SORTED TABLE | |
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | | =SORT(C9:D14, 2, | |
| 10 | \$ 87,158.00 | 39% | | SORT(array, [sort_index], [sort_order], [by_col]) | |
| 11 | \$ 15,871.00 | 22% | | | |
| 12 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | | |
| 13 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | | |
| 14 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | | |
| 15 | | | | | |

[sort_order]

What is the sort order? 1 for Ascending, -1 for Descending order.


Since we want descending order, place in -1.

=SORT(C9:D14, 2, -1)

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------------------------------------|----------|---|---------------------------------------|----------|
| 7 | | | | SORTED TABLE | |
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE | | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | TAX RATE |
| 9 | \$ - | 13% | | =SORT(C9:D14, 2, -1) | |
| 10 | \$ 87,158.00 | 39% | | | |
| 11 | \$ 15,874.00 | 22% | | | |
| 12 | \$ 35,897.00 | 30% | | | |
| 13 | \$ 141,569.00 | 45% | | | |
| 14 | \$ 8,456.00 | 18% | | | |
| 15 | | | | | |

Now it gets sorted magically!

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------------------------------------|------------|----------|---------------------------------------|------------|
| 7 | | | | SORTED TABLE | |
| 8 | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | | TAX RATE | INCOME IS GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO... | |
| 9 | \$ | - | 13% | \$ | 141,569.00 |
| 10 | \$ | 87,458.00 | 39% | \$ | 87,458.00 |
| 11 | \$ | 15,874.00 | 22% | \$ | 36,897.00 |
| 12 | \$ | 36,897.00 | 30% | \$ | 15,874.00 |
| 13 | \$ | 141,569.00 | 15% | \$ | 8,156.00 |
| 14 | \$ | 8,156.00 | 18% | \$ | - |



SORTBY

What does it do?

Sorts a table based on the column(s) specified

Formula breakdown:

=SORTBY(array, by_array1, sort_order1, [by_array2, sort_order2], ...)

What it means:

=SORTBY(data to be sorted, by which column to sort first, [by which column to sort afterwards], ...)

Example:

=SORTBY(B9:D14, B9:B14, 1, D9:D14, 1)

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Did you know that you can now sort your table data with an Excel Formula? Yes you can! It is definitely possible now with **Excel's SORTBY Formula**. It also allows you to sort by multiple columns as well. It is a new formula introduced in **Excel 2019!**

We have a person list that we want to sort by Gender (ascending order) and then by Age (ascending order).

Do take note that in specifying the sorting order, 1 represents ascending order, -1 represents descending order.

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to **enter the SORTBY function in a blank cell:**

=SORTBY(

| | J | K | L | M | N | O | |
|----|---|--------|---------|-----|---|------|-----|
| 7 | | | | | SORTED TABLE | | |
| 8 | | GENDER | NAME | AGE | GENDER | NAME | AGE |
| 9 | | M | John | 37 | =SORTBY(| | |
| 10 | | M | Hyun | 35 | =SORTBY(array, by array, sort order, ...) | | |
| 11 | | F | Kay | 25 | | | |
| 12 | | M | Michael | 30 | | | |
| 13 | | F | Cess | 32 | | | |
| 14 | | F | Jill | 44 | | | |

STEP 2: The **SORTBY** arguments:

array

What is the data to be sorted?

Select the cells containing the personal data, do not include the headers:

=SORTBY(B9:D14,

| | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|---|---------------|-------------|------------|---------------|-------------|------------|
| 7 | | | | | SORTED TABLE | | |
| 8 | | GENDER | NAME | AGE | GENDER | NAME | AGE |
| 9 | M | John | 32 | | | | |
| 10 | M | Bryan | 35 | | | | |
| 11 | F | Kay | 25 | | | | |
| 12 | M | Michael | 30 | | | | |
| 13 | F | Cess | 32 | | | | |
| 14 | F | Jill | 44 | | | | |

by_array1, sort_order1

Which column will be used to sort first?

Select the cells containing the gender column, then type in 1 for it to be ascending order.

=SORTBY(B9:D14, B9:B14, 1,

| | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|---|---------------|-------------|--|---------------|-------------|------------|
| 7 | | | | | SORTED TABLE | | |
| 8 | | GENDER | NAME | AGE | GENDER | NAME | AGE |
| 9 | M | John | | =SORTBY(B9:D14, B9:B14, 1, | | | |
| 10 | M | Bryan | | SORTBY(array, by_array1, sort_order1), [by_array2, sort_order2], [by_array3, ...]) | | | |
| 11 | F | Kay | | | | | |
| 12 | M | Michael | | | | | |
| 13 | F | Cess | | | | | |
| 14 | F | Jill | | | | | |

by_array2, sort_order2

Which column will be used to sort next?

Select the cells containing the age column, then type in 1 for it to be ascending order.

`=SORTBY(B9:D14, B9:B14, 1, D9:D14, 1)`

| | | | SORTED TABLE | | |
|--------|---------|-----|--------------|------|-----|
| GENDER | NAME | AGE | GENDER | NAME | AGE |
| M | John | 32 | | | |
| M | Bryan | 35 | | | |
| F | Kay | 25 | | | |
| M | Michael | 30 | | | |
| F | Cess | 32 | | | |
| F | Jill | 44 | | | |

Now it gets sorted magically!

| | | | SORTED TABLE | | |
|--------|---------|-----|--------------|------|-----|
| GENDER | NAME | AGE | GENDER | NAME | AGE |
| F | Kay | 25 | | | |
| F | Cess | 32 | | | |
| F | Jill | 44 | | | |
| M | Michael | 30 | | | |
| M | John | 32 | | | |
| M | Bryan | 35 | | | |

UNIQUE

What does it do?

Gets the unique values of a list

Formula breakdown:

=UNIQUE(array)

What it means:

=UNIQUE(data to have duplicates removed)

Example:

=UNIQUE(C9:C14)

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

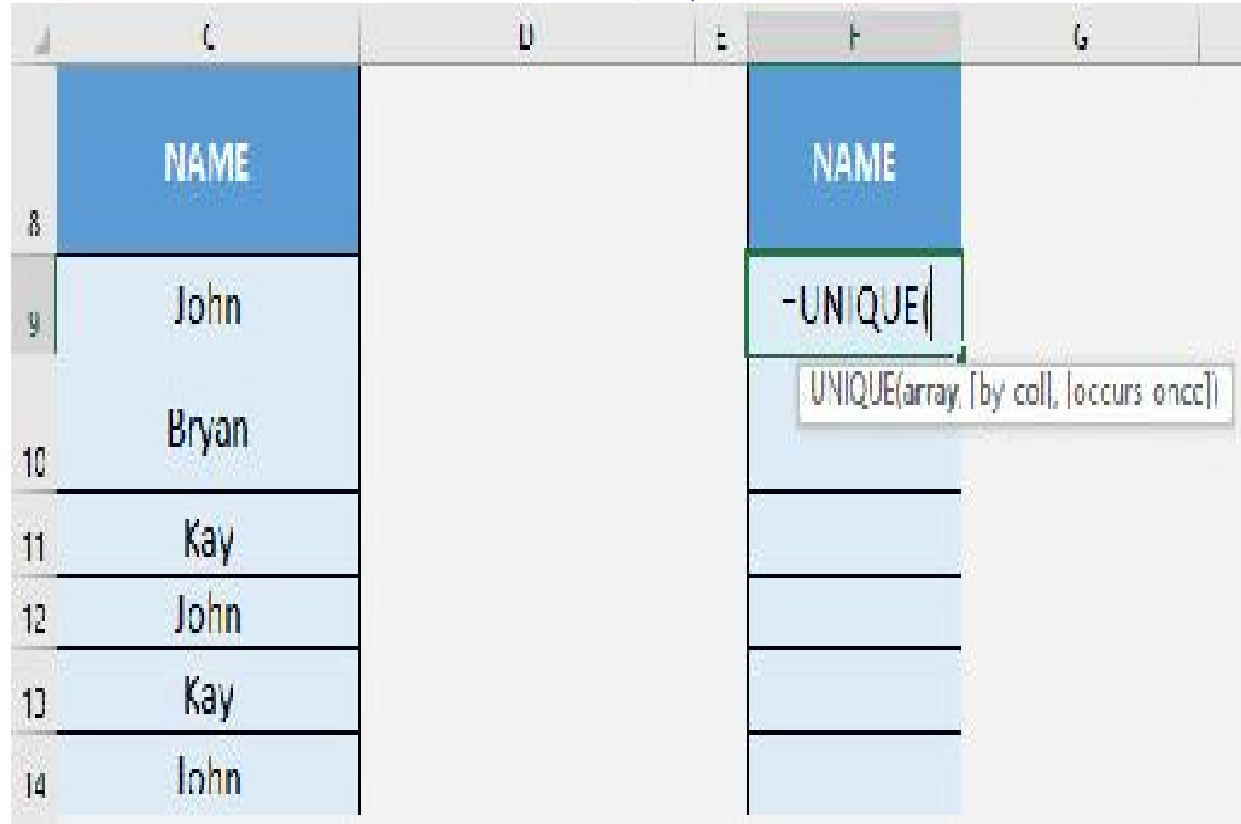
Want to remove duplicate values from your list? It is definitely possible now with Excel's **UNIQUE Formula**. It is a new formula introduced in **Excel 2019!**

We have a list of names and we want to remove the duplicates from it. The **UNIQUE Formula** will make this very quick to do!

I explain how you can do this below:

STEP 1: We need to enter the **UNIQUE** function in a blank cell:

=UNIQUE(



| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|-------|---|---|-----------------|---|
| 8 | NAME | | | NAME | |
| 9 | John | | | =UNIQUE(C9:C14) | |
| 10 | Bryan | | | | |
| 11 | Kay | | | | |
| 12 | John | | | | |
| 13 | Kay | | | | |
| 14 | John | | | | |

UNIQUE(array, [by col], [occurs once])

STEP 2: The **UNIQUE** arguments:

array

What is the data to be cleared of duplicate values?

Select the cells containing the names, do not include the headers:

=UNIQUE(C9:C14)

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|-------|---|---|-----------------|
| 8 | NAME | | | NAME |
| 9 | John | | | =UNIQUE(C9:C14) |
| 10 | Bryan | | | |
| 11 | Kay | | | |
| 12 | John | | | |
| 13 | Kay | | | |
| 14 | John | | | |

Now the duplicate names are all gone!

| | C | D | E | F |
|----|-------|---|---|-------|
| 8 | NAME | | | NAME |
| 9 | John | | | John |
| 10 | Bryan | | | Bryan |
| 11 | Kay | | | Kay |
| 12 | John | | | |
| 13 | Kay | | | |
| 14 | John | | | |
| 15 | | | | |

ADVANCED FORMULAS

3D Formulas

What does it do?

3D Formulas or References in Excel are a great way to consolidate data from multiple sheets.

3D Formulas reference several worksheets that have the same structure which allows you to consolidate by using the SUM function.

Formula breakdown:

=SUM(Sheet1:Sheet4!A1)

What it means:

=SUM(from this Sheet#:up to this Sheet#! return the sum of these cells)

Example:

=SUM(MARKETING:ADMIN!C13)

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

STEP 1: Make sure you have a SUMMARY *Sheet* and several sheets where you want to sum your data from;

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with columns A through H and rows 0 through 22. A text box in the upper right area contains the instruction: "Consolidate the Expense budgets for each Quarter!". Below this, a table is displayed with the following structure:

| SUMMARY | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total |
|----------|----|----|----|----|-------|
| Direct | | | | | |
| Indirect | | | | | |
| Variable | | | | | |
| TOTAL | | | | | |

The spreadsheet's bottom tab bar shows several sheets: SUMMARY (highlighted), MARKETING, SALES, FINANCE, SOURCING, and ADMIN. A plus sign icon is visible to the right of the tabs.

STEP 2: All *Sheets* have to have the same structure...so the same number of columns, rows and cells;

Example:

Consolidate the Expense budgets for each Quarter!

| MARKETING | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Direct | \$259 | \$170 | \$482 | \$187 | \$1,098 |
| Indirect | \$106 | \$215 | \$534 | \$681 | \$1,536 |
| Variable | \$690 | \$342 | \$357 | \$480 | \$1,869 |
| TOTAL | \$1,055 | \$727 | \$1,373 | \$1,348 | \$4,503 |

7 Example:

Consolidate the Expense budgets for each Quarter!

| SALES | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total |
|--------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Direct | \$729 | \$337 | \$486 | \$709 | \$2,261 |
| Indirect | \$690 | \$537 | \$186 | \$150 | \$1,563 |
| Variable | \$370 | \$187 | \$538 | \$508 | \$1,553 |
| TOTAL | \$1,739 | \$1,061 | \$1,210 | \$1,367 | \$5,377 |

SUMMARY

MARKETING

SALES

FINANCE

SOURCING

ADMIN



Example:

Consolidate the Expense budgets for each Quarter!

| FINANCE | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total |
|----------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| Direct | \$601 | \$405 | \$401 | \$274 | \$1,681 |
| Indirect | \$376 | \$358 | \$778 | \$377 | \$1,884 |
| Variable | \$414 | \$204 | \$109 | \$345 | \$1,072 |
| TOTAL | \$1,391 | \$967 | \$1,288 | \$991 | \$4,637 |

Example:

Consolidate the Expense budgets for each Quarter!

11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22

| SOURCING | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Direct | \$180 | \$180 | \$531 | \$205 | \$1,095 |
| Indirect | \$185 | \$247 | \$151 | \$698 | \$1,276 |
| Variable | \$730 | \$595 | \$439 | \$157 | \$1,921 |
| TOTAL | \$1,095 | \$1,017 | \$1,121 | \$1,060 | \$4,293 |

Example:

Consolidate the Expense budgets for each Quarter!

| ADMIN | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total |
|--------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Direct | \$104 | \$701 | \$452 | \$372 | \$1,629 |
| Indirect | \$163 | \$293 | \$397 | \$526 | \$1,379 |
| Variable | \$206 | \$134 | \$424 | \$499 | \$1,263 |
| TOTAL | \$473 | \$1,128 | \$1,273 | \$1,397 | \$4,271 |

SUMMARY MARKETING SALES FINANCE SOURCING ADMIN

STEP 3: Enter a SUM formula in your SUMMARY *Sheet*, preferably in the top left hand corner;

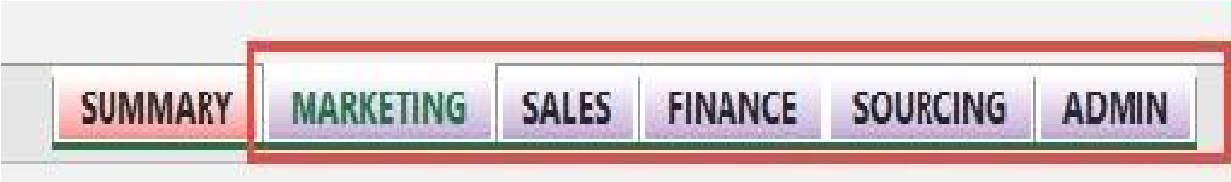
| | B | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|----------------|------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--------------|
| 12 | SUMMARY | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total |
| 13 | Direct | =SUM(| | | | |
| 14 | Indirect | SUM(number1, [number2], ...) | | | | |
| 15 | Variable | | | | | |
| 16 | TOTAL | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | | |

STEP 4: With your mouse select the first *Sheet* you want to consolidate;



STEP 5: Hold down the SHIFT key;

STEP 6: Whilst holding the SHIFT key, select the last *Sheet* you want to consolidate with your mouse key;




STEP 7: In the formula bar, type in the active cell that you are in (from Step 3) after the **=** and press *Enter*

| | B | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|---------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--------------|
| 12 | SUMMARY | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total |
| 13 | =SUM(MARKETING:ADMIN!C13) | | | | | |
| 14 | Indirect | | | | | |
| 15 | Variable | | | | | |
| 16 | TOTAL | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | | |

STEP 8: Drag the formula across all your cells. That's it!

| | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|----------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--------------|---|
| 12 | SUMMARY | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total | |
| 13 | Direct | \$1,873 | \$1,793 | \$2,352 | \$1,747 | \$7,765 | |
| 14 | Indirect | | | | | | |
| 15 | Variable | | | | | | |
| 16 | TOTAL | | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | | | |



| | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|----------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--------------|---|
| 12 | SUMMARY | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | Total | |
| 13 | Direct | \$1,873 | \$1,793 | \$2,352 | \$1,747 | \$7,765 | |
| 14 | Indirect | \$1,520 | \$1,645 | \$2,046 | \$2,427 | \$7,638 | |
| 15 | Variable | \$2,360 | \$1,462 | \$1,867 | \$1,989 | \$7,678 | |
| 16 | TOTAL | \$5,753 | \$4,900 | \$6,265 | \$6,163 | \$23,081 | |
| 17 | | | | | | | |
| 18 | | | | | | | |



Note: You can change the *Sheet* names and this will be reflected in your 3D formula.

You cannot move the positioning of the ***Sheets*** after you create the 3D formula as this throw out the formula.

ARRAY Formulas

What does it do?

An Array Formula performs an Excel operation (math, comparative, join or function argument) on an array or range of data. This could be a range of cells, a worksheet reference or a defined name.

An Array contains more than one cell, so you cannot perform an Array Formula on a single cell.

To turn your formula into an Array Formula, you will need to press **CTRL+SHIFT+ENTER** which will put the squiggly brackets {} outside the formula: **{=MAX(D13:D16-C13:C16)}**

Let's break down the different Excel operations that you can use to create an Array Formula:

MATH: +-* /()

COMPARATIVE: =<>

JOIN: &

FUNCTIONS: MAX, MIN, IF, INDEX, VLOOKUP etc

Creates a cell reference based on the row and column numbers

Example:

{=MAX(D13:D16-C13:C16)}

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

Let's do an example of an Array Formula that calculates the maximum stock value change over a four day period:

STEP 1: Enter the MAX formula

`=MAX(`

STEP 2: Subtract one array/range of data from another array/range of data

`=MAX(D13:D16-C13:C16)`

| FACEBOOK STOCK PRICES | | |
|-----------------------|------|------------------------------------|
| DATE | OPEN | CLOSE |
| 18/02/2015 | 105 | 109 |
| 19/02/2015 | 108 | 95 |
| 20/02/2015 | 99 | 104 |
| 21/02/2015 | 106 | 120 |
| | | |
| | | <code>=MAX(D13:D16-C13:C16)</code> |

STEP 3: Instead of pressing ENTER to evaluate the formula, you need to press **CTRL+SHIFT+ENTER** to turn the formula into an Array Formula which will look like this:

`{=MAX(D13:D16-C13:C16)}`

| FACEBOOK STOCK PRICES | | |
|-----------------------|------------|-----------|
| DATE | OPEN | CLOSE |
| 18/02/2015 | 105 | 109 |
| 19/02/2015 | 108 | 95 |
| 20/02/2015 | 99 | 104 |
| 21/02/2015 | 106 | 120 |
| | MAX | 14 |

STEP 4: By pressing F9 on the selected formula array will give you the resulting array of numbers (press CTRL+Z to get out of this mode when you are done checking the formula results):

| |
|------------------------------|
| =MAX(D13:D16-C13:C16) |
| =MAX({4;-13;5;14}) |

If we had to get the above result using a non-Array Formula we would have to create a helper column which subtracts the Open & Close cells and then enter the MAX formula to reference these results. This is double the work!

BETWEEN

What does it do?

There is no explicit **Between formula** in Excel, however we can come up with creative ways to create this functionality. Our goal is to evaluate if a given value is between a range, for example, is 6 between 1 and 10?

We have three possible scenarios: **numbers, dates, and text.**

We want to check if a value is in between two other values.

There are different creative ways so be sure to view them all below!

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

STEP 1: For **numbers**, we have a creative use of the **MEDIAN** formula:

`=IF(C7=MEDIAN(A7:C7), "Yes", "No")`

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|---|----------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| | START OF RANGE | END OF RANGE | VALUE TO BE EVALUATED | IS THE VALUE IN BETWEEN? | FORMULA |
| 7 | 20 | 60 | 50 | Yes | <code>=IF(C7=MEDIAN(A7:C7), "Yes", "No")</code> |
| 8 | 10 | 40 | 50 | No | <code>=IF(C8=MEDIAN(A8:C8), "Yes", "No")</code> |
| 9 | 70 | 100 | 50 | No | <code>=IF(C9=MEDIAN(A9:C9), "Yes", "No")</code> |

In our first example above, the range is 20-60, upon checking the value 50, it is in between this range.

The median formula will return the value in the middle of these 3 values when arranged in increasing order: 20, 50, 60. The median value is 50. Since it matches the value we are evaluating, then the answer we get is a **Yes**, this value (50) is in between the range.

STEP 2: For **dates**, we have the same application of the **MEDIAN** formula. Because Excel treats dates as numbers too:

`=IF(C10=MEDIAN(A10:C10), "Yes", "No")`

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|----------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|--|
| | START OF RANGE | END OF RANGE | VALUE TO BE EVALUATED | IS THE VALUE IN BETWEEN? | FORMULA |
| 10 | 2016-05-01 | 2016-07-01 | 2016-06-01 | Yes | <code>=IF(C10=MEDIAN(A10:C10), "Yes", "No")</code> |
| 11 | 2016-01-30 | 2016-05-30 | 2016-06-01 | No | <code>=IF(C11=MEDIAN(A11:C11), "Yes", "No")</code> |

In our first example above, the range is May 1 - July 1, upon checking the date June 1, it is in between this range.

The median formula will return the value in the middle of these 3 dates when arranged in increasing order: May 1, June 1, July 1. The median value is June 1. Since it matches the value we are evaluating, then the answer we get is a **Yes**, this value (June 1) is in between the range.

STEP 3: For text, we are checking if the value is alphabetically in the middle. We will be using the **AND formula**:

=IF(AND(C12>=A12, C12<=B12), "Yes", "No")

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|----------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| 6 | START OF RANGE | END OF RANGE | VALUE TO BE EVALUATED | IS THE VALUE IN BETWEEN? | FORMULA |
| 12 | Cat | Dog | Cow | Yes | =IF(AND(C12>=A12, C12<=B12), "Yes", "No") |
| 13 | Dog | Mouse | Cow | No | =IF(AND(C13>=A13, C13<=B13), "Yes", "No") |

Interestingly enough, you can compare texts using the **>= and <= operators**. Excel is able to compare them which goes alphabetically first or last.

In our first example above, the range is Cat - Dog, upon checking the text Cow, it is in between this range. As when arranged alphabetically, it would be: Cat, Cow, Dog.

The And formula checks if **Cow >= Cat**, and **Cow <= Dog**. You will see that both of these are true, as **Cow** is alphabetically later than **Cat**, while **Cow** is alphabetically ahead of **Dog**. Which is why we get a **Yes** result.

Extract First Name from Full Name

What does it do?

Gets the first name from a full name

Formula breakdown:

=LEFT(full_name, FIND(space, full name) -1)

What it means:

=LEFT(the full name, location of the last character in the first name)

Example:

=LEFT("John Michaloudis", FIND(" ", "John Michaloudis") -1)

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

There were countless times when I had a list of full names, and all I needed was the First Name. It would be time-consuming to manually get the first names one by one. Thank goodness there are formulas to make my life easier!

In Excel, it's very easy to do that with the **LEFT** and **FIND** formula!

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------------|-------------------|---|
| 6 | FULL NAME | FIRST NAME | |
| 7 | Talon Ferguson | | |
| 8 | Doris Velez | | |
| 9 | John Michaloudis | | |
| 10 | Cain Sawyer | | |
| 11 | Giacomo Irujillo | | |
| 12 | Holly Coffey | | |

Here is the gameplan:

- Use the **FIND** formula to find the location of the space that separates the **First Name** and the **Last Name**
- However we need to deduct this numerical location by 1, so that we have the location of the **end of the First Name**
- With this number, we will use the **LEFT** formula to retrieve the **First Name!**

STEP 1: We need to **enter the LEFT function** and **select the Full Name:**

=LEFT(C7

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------------|-------------------------|---|
| 6 | FULL NAME | FIRST NAME | |
| 7 | Talon Ferguson | =LEFT(C7 | |
| 8 | Doris Velez | LEFT(text, [num_chars]) | |
| 9 | John Michaloudis | | |
| 10 | Cain Sawyer | | |
| 11 | Giacomo Trujillo | | |
| 12 | Holly Coffey | | |

STEP 2: We need to enter the **FIND** formula to get the empty space location between the first and last name:

=LEFT(C7, FIND(" "))

| | C | D | E | F | G |
|----|------------------|---|---|---|---|
| 6 | FULL NAME | FIRST NAME | | | |
| 7 | Talon Ferguson | =LEFT(C7, FIND(" ")) | | | |
| 8 | Doris Velez | FIND(find_text, within_text, [start_num]) | | | |
| 9 | John Michaloudis | | | | |
| 10 | Cain Sawyer | | | | |
| 11 | Giacomo Trujillo | | | | |
| 12 | Holly Coffey | | | | |

STEP 3: Select the **Full Name** again for the **FIND** formula's 2nd argument:

`=LEFT(C7, FIND(" ", C7))`

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| 6 | FULL NAME | FIRST NAME | |
| 7 | Talon Ferguson | <code>=LEFT(C7, FIND(" ", C7))</code> | |
| 8 | Doris Velez | <code>LEFT(text, [num_chars])</code> | |
| 9 | John Michaloudis | | |
| 10 | Cain Sawyer | | |
| 11 | Giacomo Trujillo | | |
| 12 | Holly Coffey | | |

STEP 4: Deduct 1 from the **FIND** formula so that our result will return us the text up to the last letter of the first name:

`=LEFT(C7, FIND(" ", C7) - 1)`

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------------|----------------------------|---|
| 6 | FULL NAME | FIRST NAME | |
| 7 | Talon Ferguson | =LEFT(C7, FIND(" ",C7) -1) | |
| 8 | Doris Velez | | |
| 9 | John Michaloudis | | |
| 10 | Cain Sawyer | | |
| 11 | Giacomo Trujillo | | |
| 12 | Holly Coffey | | |

STEP 5: Do the same for the rest of the cells by dragging the formula all the way down using the left mouse button.

Now you are able to extract all the **First Names from your FULL NAME using the FIND formula in Excel!**

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------------|-------------------|---|
| 6 | FULL NAME | FIRST NAME | |
| 7 | Talon Ferguson | Talon | |
| 8 | Doris Velez | Doris | |
| 9 | John Michaloudis | John | |
| 10 | Cain Sawyer | Cain | |
| 11 | Giacomo Irujillo | Giacomo | |
| 12 | Holly Coffey | Holly | |
| 13 | | | |



Extract Last Name - REPLACE Function

What does it do?

Replaces part of a text string, based on the number of characters you specify, with a different text string

Formula breakdown:

=REPLACE(old_text, start_num, num_chars, new_text)

What it means:

=REPLACE(this cell, starting from this number, all the way to this number, with this new text)

Example:

=REPLACE("Bryan Hong",1,SEARCH(" ", "Bryan Hong"),"")="Hong"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

I had a scenario where I wanted to extract the last names from a list of names using a formula.

Did you know that we can creatively use the **REPLACE formula** to replace the first name with an empty string, leaving us with the SURNAME?

Here is what we want to happen:

| | C | D |
|----|------------------|-------------|
| 10 | FULL NAME | SURNAME |
| 11 | Talon Ferguson | Ferguson |
| 12 | Doris Velez | Velez |
| 13 | John Michaloudis | Michaloudis |
| 14 | Cain Sawyer | Sawyer |
| 15 | Giacomo Trujillo | Trujillo |
| 16 | Holly Coffey | Coffey |
| 17 | | |

STEP 1: To start off, let us try the **Search function** and see what it will give us. We want to search on which character the space resides on. Type in:

`=SEARCH(" ", C11)`

| | C | D |
|----|------------------|-------------------|
| 10 | FULL NAME | |
| 11 | Talon Ferguson | =SEARCH(" ", C11) |
| 12 | Doris Velez | |
| 13 | John Michaloudis | |
| 14 | Cain Sawyer | |
| 15 | Giacomo Trujillo | |
| 16 | Holly Coffey | |

You will see that it returned **6**.

This means our space is on the 6th character of the name *Talon Ferguson*.

We will use this in our **Replace function** later in **STEP 3**.

| | C | D |
|----|------------------|---------|
| 10 | FULL NAME | SURNAME |
| 11 | Talon Ferguson | 6 |
| 12 | Doris Velez | |
| 13 | John Michaloudis | |
| 14 | Cain Sawyer | |
| 15 | Giacomo Trujillo | |
| 16 | Holly Coffey | |

STEP 2: Clear the Search function. We need to **enter the *Replace* function** next to the cell that we want to clean the data from:

=REPLACE

STEP 3: The Replace arguments:

old_text

Which text do we want to change?

Reference the cell that contains the text string:

=REPLACE(C11,

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------------|---|---|
| 10 | FULL NAME | | |
| 11 | Talon Ferguson | =REPLACE(C11, | |
| 12 | Doris Velez | | |
| 13 | John Michaloudis | REPLACE(old_text, start_num, num_chars, new_text) | |
| 14 | Cain Sawyer | | |
| 15 | Giacomo Trujillo | | |
| 16 | Holly Coffey | | |

start_num

Which character do we want to start the replacement from?

We want to replace the first name, which resides on the first character:

=REPLACE(C11, 1,

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------------|---|---|
| 10 | FULL NAME | | |
| 11 | Ian Ferguson | =REPLACE(C11, 1, | |
| 12 | Doris Velez | | |
| 13 | John Michaloudis | REPLACE(old_text, start_num, num_chars, new_text) | |
| 14 | Cain Sawyer | | |
| 15 | Giacomo Trujillo | | |
| 16 | Holly Cottey | | |

num_chars

How many characters do we need to replace?

We don't have the exact number of characters, so this is where the SEARCH function comes in handy from STEP 1 above.

Search for the space character " " which tells us the end of the First Name:

=REPLACE(C11, 1, SEARCH(" ", C11),

| | C | D | E |
|----|------------------|---|---|
| 10 | FULL NAME | | |
| 11 | Talon Ferguson | =REPLACE(C11,1,SEARCH(" ", C11), | |
| 12 | Doris Velez | | |
| 13 | John Michaloudis | REPLACE(old_text, start_num, num_chars, new_text) | |
| 14 | Cain Sawyer | | |
| 15 | Giacomo Trujillo | | |
| 16 | Holly Coffey | | |

new_text

What text will serve as the replacement?

Now that we have accounted for all the characters from the First Name, we need to clear these.

We can do this by replacing it with an empty string.

This will "erase" the First Name, and leave us with the Last Name.


=REPLACE(C11, 1, SEARCH(" ", C11), "")

| | C | D | F |
|----|--------------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| 10 | FULL NAME | | |
| 11 | John Ferguson | =REPLACE(C11,1,SEARCH(" ",C11),"") | |
| 12 | Doris Velez | | |
| 13 | John Michaloudis | | |
| 14 | Cain Sawyer | | |
| 15 | Giacomo Trujillo | | |
| 16 | Holly Coffey | | |

STEP 4: Do the same for the rest of the cells by dragging the **REPLACE** formula all the way down using the left mouse button.

Now we have all of the last names:

| | C | D |
|----|------------------|-------------|
| 10 | FULL NAME | SURNAME |
| 11 | Talon Ferguson | Ferguson |
| 12 | Doris Velez | Velez |
| 13 | John Michaloudis | Michaloudis |
| 14 | Cain Sawyer | Sawyer |
| 15 | Giacomo Trujillo | Trujillo |
| 16 | Holly Coffey | Coffey |
| 17 | | |



GETPIVOTDATA

What does it do?

A formula that extracts data stored in a Pivot Table

Formula breakdown:

=GETPIVOTDATA(**data_field**, **pivot_table**, [field1, item1], [field2,item2],...)

What it means:

=GETPIVOTDATA(**return me this value from the Values Area, any cell within the Pivot Table**, [and return me the value that pertains to this Field name, and this Field item],...)

Example:

=GETPIVOTDATA("SALES",A1,"SALES REGION","AMERICAS","FINANCIAL YEAR",2013,"SALES QTR","Q1")

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The GETPIVOTDATA function in Excel returns data stored in a Pivot Table. So essentially it extracts the Pivot Table data to enable a user to create customized reports.

Think of the Pivot Table like your data source, so anything you see in the Pivot Table report can be extracted with the GETPIVOTDATA function and put into a cell within your worksheet.

The GETPIVOTDATA function becomes powerful when you reference cells to create shell reports.

NB. Only the Fields and Items that are included in the Pivot Table report (Row/Column Labels and Values area) can be used to extract their values.

Here is our current Pivot Table:

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|--------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 | Sum of SALES | Column Label | | |
| 2 | Row Labels | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 |
| 3 | UNIT | 2,477,547 | 3,786,643 | 2,805,541 |
| 4 | AMERICAS | 494,065 | 1,564,156 | 743,145 |
| 5 | EUROPE | 591,445 | 698,717 | 747,267 |
| 6 | ASIA | 560,250 | 745,061 | 614,503 |
| 7 | AFRICA | 776,782 | 778,710 | 700,568 |
| 8 | =Q2 | 2,588,623 | 2,800,407 | 2,399,680 |
| 9 | AMERICAS | 512,206 | 529,990 | 443,535 |
| 10 | EUROPE | 758,121 | 728,130 | 647,088 |
| 11 | ASIA | 658,377 | 723,009 | 711,729 |
| 12 | AFRICA | 659,919 | 819,269 | 597,278 |
| 13 | =Q3 | 2,726,381 | 2,671,945 | 2,484,077 |
| 14 | AMERICAS | 790,175 | 668,677 | 695,978 |
| 15 | EUROPE | 657,629 | 624,501 | 520,124 |
| 16 | ASIA | 613,257 | 704,170 | 607,743 |
| 17 | AFRICA | 585,325 | 674,607 | 580,162 |
| 18 | =Q4 | 2,650,700 | 2,732,442 | 2,878,712 |
| 19 | AMERICAS | 702,776 | 639,140 | 587,234 |
| 20 | EUROPE | 666,901 | 670,682 | 760,947 |
| 21 | ASIA | 655,099 | 707,790 | 597,121 |
| 22 | AFRICA | 625,924 | 714,830 | 733,410 |

PivotTable Fields

Choose fields to add to report:

Search

Available Fields:

- SALES REGION
- ORDER DATE
- SALES

Drag fields between areas below:

Filters

Columns

FINANCIAL YEAR

Rows

SALES CTR

SALES REGION

Values

Sum of SALES

Defer Layout Update Update

STEP 1: We need to enter the *GETPIVOTDATA* function:

=GETPIVOTDATA(

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|--------|---|------|------|------|--------|
| 25 | | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 |
| 26 | | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | ACTUAL |
| 27 | | =GETPIVOTDATA(| | | | 0 |
| 28 | EUROPE | GETPIVOTDATA(data_field, pivot_table, [field1, item1], ...) | | | | 0 |
| 29 | ASIA | | | | | 0 |
| 30 | AFRICA | | | | | 0 |
| 31 | TOTALS | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

STEP 2: The **GETPIVOTDATA** arguments:

data_field

What is the value that we want to return?

Type in *SALES* as we want to return the sales value:

=GETPIVOTDATA("SALES",

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|--------|---|------|------|------|--------|
| 25 | | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 |
| 26 | | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | ACTUAL |
| 27 | | =GETPIVOTDATA("SALES" | | | | 0 |
| 28 | EURO | GETPIVOTDATA(data_field, pivot_table, [field], [item], ...) | | | | 0 |
| 29 | ASIA | | | | | 0 |
| 30 | AFRICA | | | | | 0 |
| 31 | TOTALS | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

pivot_table

From which pivot table?

Just reference a cell in the pivot table, let's type in \$A\$1

=GETPIVOTDATA("SALES", **\$A\$1,**

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------------|--|------|------|------|--------|
| 25 | | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 |
| 26 | | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | ACTUAL |
| 27 | | =GETPIVOTDATA("SALES", \$A\$1, | | | | 0 |
| 28 | CU | GETPIVOTDATA(data_field, pivot_table, {field1, item1}, {field2, item2}, ...) | | | | 0 |
| 29 | ASIA | | | | | 0 |
| 30 | AFRICA | | | | | 0 |
| 31 | TOTALS | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|--------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 | Sum of SALES | Column Labels | | |
| 2 | Row Labels | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 |
| 3 | = Q1 | 2,422,542 | 3,786,643 | 2,895,543 |
| 4 | AMERICAS | 494,065 | 1,564,156 | 743,145 |
| 5 | EUROPE | 591,445 | 698,717 | 747,267 |
| 6 | ASIA | 560,250 | 745,031 | 614,563 |
| 7 | AFRICA | 776,782 | 778,739 | 790,568 |
| 8 | = Q2 | 2,588,623 | 2,800,407 | 2,399,630 |
| 9 | AMERICAS | 512,206 | 529,990 | 443,535 |
| 10 | EUROPE | 758,121 | 728,139 | 647,088 |
| 11 | ASIA | 658,377 | 723,009 | 711,729 |
| 12 | AFRICA | 659,919 | 819,269 | 597,278 |

[field1, item1]

What are the fields that would serve as our filtering criteria?

To get our target sales figure, we will need: Sales Region, Financial Year and Sales Quarter. To do this we will need 3 field-item pairs:

`=GETPIVOTDATA("SALES", A1, "SALES REGION", A27, "FINANCIAL YEAR", B$25, "SALES QTR", B$26)`

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|---|------------------|----------|----------|----------|------------------|
| 25 | | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 |
| 26 | | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | ACTUAL |
| 27 | =GETPIVOTDATA("SALES", \$A\$1, "SALES REGION", \$A\$27, "FINANCIAL YEAR", \$B\$25, "SALES QTR", \$B\$26) | | | | | 1,564,156 |
| 28 | | | | | | 0 |
| 29 | | | | | | 0 |
| 30 | GETPIVOTDATA(data_field, pivot_table, [field1, item1], [field2, item2], [field3, item3], [field4, item4]) | | | | | |
| 31 | TOTALS | 1,564,156 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1,564,156 |

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------------|------------------|----------|----------|----------|------------------|
| 25 | | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 |
| 26 | | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | ACTUAL |
| 27 | AMERICAS | 1,564,156 | | | | 1,564,156 |
| 28 | EUROPE | | | | | 0 |
| 29 | ASIA | | | | | 0 |
| 30 | AFRICA | | | | | 0 |
| 31 | TOTALS | 1,564,156 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1,564,156 |

STEP 3: Do the same for the rest of the cells by copying the **GETPIVOTDATA** formula to the rest of the cells.

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------------|------------------|----------|----------|----------|------------------|
| 25 | | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 |
| 26 | | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | ACTUAL |
| 27 | AMERICAS | 1,564,156 | | | | 1,564,156 |
| 28 | EUROPE | | | | | 0 |
| 29 | ASIA | | | | | 0 |
| 30 | AFRICA | | | | | 0 |
| 31 | TOTALS | 1,564,156 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1,564,156 |

Now your new set of data is ready!

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|---------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 25 | | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 | 2013 |
| 26 | | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | ACTUAL |
| 27 | AMERICAS | 1,564,156 | 529,990 | 668,677 | 639,140 | 3,401,963 |
| 28 | EUROPE | 698,717 | 728,139 | 624,591 | 670,682 | 2,722,129 |
| 29 | ASIA | 745,031 | 723,009 | 704,070 | 707,790 | 2,879,900 |
| 30 | AFRICA | 778,739 | 819,269 | 674,607 | 714,830 | 2,987,445 |
| 31 | TOTALS | 3,786,643 | 2,800,407 | 2,671,945 | 2,732,442 | 11,991,437 |

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K | L |
|----|----------------------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|----|--------|----------------|------------|------------|-----------------|------------|---|
| 1 | Sum of SALES column labels | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Row Labels | 2017 | 2018 | 2019 | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | =Q1 | 2,422,542 | 3,706,513 | 2,095,543 | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | AMERICAS | 490,265 | 1,567,155 | 743,245 | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | EUROPE | 591,445 | 698,717 | 747,267 | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | ASIA | 560,250 | 743,031 | 614,563 | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | AFRICA | 726,282 | 728,294 | 790,458 | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | =Q2 | 2,588,623 | 2,600,407 | 2,099,533 | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | AMERICAS | 512,205 | 539,990 | 443,535 | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | EUROPE | 758,171 | 728,139 | 647,038 | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | ASIA | 650,377 | 723,000 | 711,723 | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | AFRICA | 668,419 | 629,268 | 597,237 | | | | | | | | |
| 13 | =Q3 | 2,726,381 | 2,671,345 | 2,484,377 | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | AMERICAS | 790,175 | 668,677 | 695,978 | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | EUROPE | 657,524 | 624,540 | 520,742 | | | | | | | | |
| 16 | ASIA | 693,252 | 704,070 | 687,743 | | | | | | | | |
| 17 | AFRICA | 585,375 | 674,607 | 580,163 | | | | | | | | |
| 18 | =Q4 | 2,890,700 | 2,722,442 | 2,878,712 | | | | | | | | |
| 19 | AMERICAS | 702,775 | 639,140 | 607,234 | | | | | | | | |
| 20 | EUROPE | 666,401 | 620,682 | 760,917 | | | | | | | | |
| 21 | ASIA | 655,099 | 707,790 | 697,121 | | | | | | | | |
| 22 | AFRICA | 625,324 | 724,829 | 733,410 | | | | | | | | |
| 23 | | GETPIVOTDATA | | | | | MANUAL ENTRIES | | | CUSTOM FORMULAS | | |
| 24 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 25 | | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | ACTUAL | BUDGET | POST 1 | POST 2 | % VARIANCE | % VARIANCE | |
| 26 | | Q1 | Q2 | Q3 | Q4 | ACTUAL | BUDGET | POST 1 | POST 2 | BUDGET | | |
| 27 | AMERICAS | | | | | 0 | 2,394,710 | 2,625,537 | 2,227,536 | -2,364,710 | -100.0% | ↓ |
| 28 | EUROPE | | | | | 0 | 2,545,911 | 2,174,378 | 2,890,797 | -2,545,911 | -100.0% | ↓ |
| 29 | ASIA | | | | | 0 | 2,503,797 | 2,564,233 | 2,951,062 | -2,503,797 | -100.0% | ↓ |
| 30 | AFRICA | | | | | 0 | 2,580,307 | 2,434,977 | 2,296,235 | -2,580,307 | -100.0% | ↓ |
| 31 | TOTALS | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 10,894,747 | 10,195,668 | 10,565,700 | 10,394,747 | 100.0% | ↓ |

IF Combined With The AND Function

What does it do?

It returns a value that you set if a condition is met, and a value if it is not met

Formula breakdown:

=IF(AND(Logical Test), Value if True, Value if False)

What it means:

=IF((Sales are bigger than \$3000 & in the North region), "Bonus", "No Bonus")

Example:

=IF(AND(1092>3000, "North"="north"), "Bonus", "No Bonus")

="No Bonus"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

When combining (or nesting) the AND function with the IF function, it allows you to add more than one condition to your formula, something that is not possible with the IF function by itself.

So you can show the results of Sales Reps that have made more than \$3,000 of sales AND who are part of the North region, as explained below...

We want to show a Bonus value if sales are bigger than \$3000 and comes from the North region, and No Bonus is shown if this condition is not met.

STEP 1: We need to enter the **IF function** in a blank cell:

=IF(

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with a table of sales representatives. The columns are Sales Rep, Region, Sales, and Bonus?. The Bonus? column contains the formula =IF(, which is highlighted with a blue border. A tooltip for the IF function is visible, showing the syntax: =IF(logical_test, [value_if_true], [value_if_false]).

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? |
|-----------|--------|---------|--------|
| John | North | \$1,092 | =IF(|
| Paul | South | \$9,951 | |
| Ringo | East | \$7,006 | |
| George | West | \$8,738 | |
| Ana | North | \$3,185 | |
| Marie | South | \$1,661 | |
| Wayland | East | \$5,594 | |
| Helen | West | \$457 | |
| Paula | North | \$4,935 | |

STEP 2: The **IF** arguments:

logical_test

What is your condition?

Sales Rep has sold **more than 3000 dollars** and comes from the **North Region**. Let us use the **AND function** to accomplish this.

`=IF(AND(D15>3000, C15="North"),`

| | D | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|---|---|---|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | | | |
| 15 | John | | | <code>=IF(AND(D15>3000, C15="North"),</code> | | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | | | | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | | | | |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | | | | |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | | | | |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | | | | |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | | | | |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$457 | | | | |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$4,935 | | | | |

value_if_true

What value should be displayed if the condition is true?

We want "Bonus" to be displayed

`=IF(AND(D15>3000, C15="North"), "Bonus",`

| | B | C | D | F | F | G |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|--|---|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | | |
| 15 | John | | | =IF(AND(D15>3000, C15="North"), "Bonus", | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | | | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | | | |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | | | |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | | | |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | | | |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | | | |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$457 | | | |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$4,935 | | | |

value_if_false

What value should be displayed if the condition is not met?

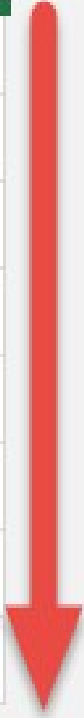
We want "No Bonus" to be displayed

=IF(AND(D15>3000, C15="North"), "Bonus", "No Bonus")

| | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|--|---|---|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | | | |
| 15 | John | | | =IF(AND(D15>3000, C15="North"), "Bonus", "No Bonus") | | | |
| 16 | Paul | South | | IF(logical_test, [value_if_true], [value_if_false]) | | | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | | | | |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | | | | |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | | | | |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | | | | |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | | | | |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$457 | | | | |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$4,935 | | | | |

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | B | C | D | E |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? |
| 15 | John | North | \$1,092 | No Bonus |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$457 | |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$4,935 | |
| 24 | | | | |



You now have all of results!

| | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|---|
| 14 | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Bonus? | |
| 15 | John | North | \$1,092 | No Bonus | |
| 16 | Paul | South | \$9,951 | No Bonus | |
| 17 | Ringo | East | \$2,006 | No Bonus | |
| 18 | George | West | \$8,738 | No Bonus | |
| 19 | Ana | North | \$3,185 | Bonus | |
| 20 | Marie | South | \$1,661 | No Bonus | |
| 21 | Wayland | East | \$5,594 | No Bonus | |
| 22 | Helen | West | \$457 | No Bonus | |
| 23 | Paula | North | \$4,935 | Bonus | |
| 24 | | | | | |



INDEX-MATCH 2 Criteria with Validation

What does it do?

Searches the row position of a value/text in one column (using the MATCH function) and returns the value/text in the same row position from another column to the left or right (using the INDEX function)

Formula breakdown:

=INDEX(array, MATCH(lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type]))

What it means:

=INDEX(return the value/text, MATCH(from the row position of this value/text))

Example:

=INDEX(INDIRECT("Table1["&\$H\$14&"]"),MATCH(G14,Table1[SALES REP],0))

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

We can use the **INDEX-MATCH** formula and combine it with Data Validation drop down menus to return a value based on 2 criteria.

This is a little advanced so you will need to drop what you are doing and really focus. Let's go...

First we need to convert our data into an Excel Table by pressing Ctrl+T

[See detailed tutorial on how to convert to an Excel Table here](#)

We then create drop down menus for our **Sales Rep** column and another one for our **Units/Sales/Avg Sale** column names

[See detailed tutorial on how to insert drop down menus here](#)

Once the above are done we need to create our formula.

STEP 1: We need to nest an **INDIRECT** function within the **INDEX** function and reference the Metric cell name (H14) with our Table name (Table1):

=INDEX(INDIRECT("Table1["&H14&"]"),

Example:

Show me the METRICS for each SALES REP?

| SALES REP | UNITS | SALES | AVG SALE |
|-----------|-------|----------|----------|
| John | 53 | \$45,860 | \$865 |
| Mike | 69 | \$20,752 | \$301 |
| Leyre | 80 | \$1,972 | \$240 |
| Ane | 58 | \$50,657 | \$1,029 |
| George | 50 | \$2,757 | \$1,075 |
| Tina | 47 | \$73,427 | \$1,562 |
| Flie | 11 | \$78,380 | \$7,125 |
| Jimmy | 62 | \$70,487 | \$1,137 |

| SALES REP | METRIC | VALUE |
|-----------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| John | UNITS | =INDEX(INDIRECT("Table1["&H14&"]"), |

INDEX(row_num, [column_num])
INDEX(reference, row_num, [column_num], [area_num])

This will give us our dynamic column name within the Excel Table.

STEP 2: We need to lookup our **Sales Rep** within the Sales Rep column table:

```
=INDEX(INDIRECT("Table1["&H14&"]"),
MATCH(G14,Table1[SALES REP],0))
```

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with the following data:

| SALES REP | UNITS | SALES | AVG. SALE |
|-----------|-------|----------|-----------|
| John | 11 | \$41,800 | \$3800 |
| Mike | 19 | \$20,752 | \$1100 |
| Layne | 50 | \$71,572 | \$1400 |
| Ane | 58 | \$50,654 | \$1,070 |
| George | 50 | \$55,757 | \$1,075 |
| Tom | 11 | \$41,111 | \$1,567 |
| Jeff | 11 | \$41,111 | \$1,121 |
| Jimmy | 12 | \$40,487 | \$1,137 |

The formula bar shows the following formula: `=INDEX(INDIRECT("Table1["&H14&"]"), MATCH(G14,Table1[SALES REP],0))`

A tooltip for the INDEX function is visible, showing the syntax: `INDEX(array,row_num,[column_num])` and `INDEX(reference,row_num,[column_num],[area_num])`.

So by combining these formulas we can choose two criteria (Sales Rep & Metric name) to return the respective value.

Example:

Show me the METRICS for each SALES REP?

| SALES REP | UNITS | SALES | AVG SALE |
|-----------|-------|----------|----------|
| John | 53 | \$15,860 | \$299 |
| Mikel | 61 | \$20,757 | \$340 |
| Leslye | 80 | \$21,972 | \$275 |
| Ane | 58 | \$58,054 | \$1,019 |
| George | 50 | \$53,757 | \$1,075 |
| Hna | 47 | \$72,427 | \$1,542 |
| L'fite | 11 | \$78,380 | \$7,126 |
| Jimmy | 62 | \$70,487 | \$1,137 |

| SALES REP | METRIC | VALUE |
|-----------|--------|-------|
| John | UNITS | 53 |

Match Two Lists With MATCH Function

What does it do?

It returns the position of an item in a range

Formula breakdown:

=MATCH(lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type])

What it means:

=MATCH(lookup this value, from this list or range of cells, return me the Exact Match).

Example:

=MATCH(C12,list2!C12:C21,0)

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

I am sure that you have come across many occasions where you have two lists of data and want to know if a specific item in *List1* exists in *List2*.

Well I have!

With the MATCH function you can verify if a cell's item in *List1* exists in *List2*.

The function will return the row position of that item in *List2* hence confirming that it exists. If you get a #N/A it means that the cell's item does not exist in *List2*.

You can then go ahead and filter your *List1* with either the values returned or the #N/As.

Here are our 2 Lists:

| STOCK LIST 1 | PRICE | MATCH |
|---------------------|--------------|--------------|
| Tel2154 | \$3,449 | |
| Lap5468 | \$5,664 | |
| Tab4577 | \$5,830 | |
| Mon45657 | \$2,496 | |
| Dro424 | \$9,553 | |
| Tel2135 | \$9,644 | |
| Lap5456 | \$8,600 | |
| Tab4598 | \$2,990 | |
| Mon45645 | \$6,282 | |
| Dro4255 | \$7,760 | |

| | STOCK LIST 2 | COST |
|----|---------------------|-------------|
| 1 | Tab4577 | \$565 |
| 2 | Tel2154 | \$515 |
| 3 | Lap000 | \$574 |
| 4 | Dro000 | \$984 |
| 5 | Mon45645 | \$899 |
| 6 | Tel2135 | \$646 |
| 7 | Lap5456 | \$524 |
| 8 | Tab000 | \$503 |
| 9 | Mon45657 | \$933 |
| 10 | Dro4255 | \$904 |

STEP 1: We need to enter the **MATCH function** in a blank cell:

`=MATCH(`

6 Example:

7

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

Do the items in STOCKLIST1 exist in STOCKLIST2?

| STOCK LIST 1 | PRICE | MATCH |
|--------------|---------|---|
| Tel2154 | \$3,449 | =MATCH(|
| Lap5468 | \$5,664 | MATCH(lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type]) |
| Tab4577 | \$5,830 | |
| Mon45657 | \$2,496 | |
| Dro424 | \$9,553 | |
| Tel2135 | \$9,044 | |
| Lap5456 | \$8,600 | |
| Tab1598 | \$2,990 | |
| Mon15645 | \$6,282 | |
| Dro1255 | \$7,760 | |

STEP 2: The **MATCH** arguments:

lookup_value

What is the value you want to check?

Select the cell containing the List1 value, as this is what we want to check against List2.

=MATCH(C12,

Example:

Do the items in STOCKLIST1 exist in STOCKLIST2?

| STOCK LIST 1 | PRICE | MATCH |
|--------------|---|-------|
| Tel2154 | MATCH(C12, | |
| Lap5468 | MATCH(lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type]) | |
| Tab4577 | \$5,800 | |
| Mon45657 | \$2,496 | |
| Dro424 | \$9,553 | |
| Tel2135 | \$9,644 | |
| Lap5456 | \$8,600 | |
| Tab4598 | \$7,990 | |
| Mon45645 | \$6,282 | |
| Dro4255 | \$7,760 | |

lookup_array

What is the list you want to check against?

Select the entire List2.

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|---|----|---------------------|--|---|---|
| 7 | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | STOCK LIST 2 | COST | | |
| 12 | | 1 | Tab4577 | \$565 | | |
| 13 | | 2 | Tel2154 | \$515 | | |
| 14 | | 3 | Lap000 | \$574 | | |
| 15 | | 4 | Dro000 | <small>MATCH(lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type])</small> | | |
| 16 | | 5 | Mon45645 | \$899 | | |
| 17 | | 6 | Tel2135 | \$646 | | |
| 18 | | 7 | Lap5456 | \$524 | | |
| 19 | | 8 | Tab000 | \$503 | | |
| 20 | | 9 | Mon45657 | \$933 | | |
| 21 | | 10 | Dro4255 | \$904 | | |
| 22 | | | | | | |

And ensure to **press F4** to make it an absolute reference.

=MATCH(C12, list2!\$C\$12:\$C:21,

6 Example:

Do the items in STOCKLIST1 exist in STOCKLIST2?

7

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

| STOCK LIST 1 | PRICE | MATCH |
|--------------|---|-------|
| Tel2154 | =MATCH(C12, list2!\$C\$12:\$C\$21, | |
| Lap5468 | MATCH(lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type]) | |
| Tab4577 | \$5,830 | |
| Mon45657 | \$2,496 | |
| Dro424 | \$9,553 | |
| Tel2135 | \$9,644 | |
| Lap5456 | \$8,600 | |
| Tab4598 | \$2,990 | |
| Mon45645 | \$6,287 | |
| Dro4255 | \$7,760 | |

- 1 - Less than
- 0 - Exact match
- 1 - Greater than

match_type

How specific is your matching?

We want an exact match so place in 0.

6 Example:

Do the items in STOCKLIST1 exist in STOCKLIST2?

7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21


| STOCK LIST 1 | PRICE | MATCH |
|--------------|---------|-------|
| Tel2154 | | |
| Lap5468 | | |
| Tab4577 | \$5,830 | |
| Mon45657 | \$2,496 | |
| Dro424 | \$9,553 | |
| Tel2135 | \$9,644 | |
| Lap5456 | \$8,600 | |
| Tab4598 | \$2,990 | |
| Mnn45645 | \$6,787 | |
| Dro4255 | \$7,760 | |

=MATCH(C12, list2!\$C\$12:\$C\$21, 0)

MATCH(lookup_value, lookup_array, [match_type])

Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|----------|---|---------------------|--------------|--------------|---|
| 6 | Example: | Do the items in STOCKLIST1 exist in STOCKLIST2? | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | STOCK LIST 1 | PRICE | MATCH | |
| 12 | | | Tel2154 | \$3,449 | 2 | |
| 13 | | | Lap5468 | \$5,664 | | |
| 14 | | | Tab4577 | \$5,800 | | |
| 15 | | | Mon45657 | \$2,496 | | |
| 16 | | | Dro174 | \$9,553 | | |
| 17 | | | Tel2135 | \$9,644 | | |
| 18 | | | Lap5456 | \$8,600 | | |
| 19 | | | Tab4598 | \$2,990 | | |
| 20 | | | Mon45645 | \$6,282 | | |
| 21 | | | Dro4255 | \$7,760 | | |
| 22 | | | | | | |



You now have all of results! You can see which row numbers the items exist in List2. For example, Mon45657 in List1 exists in List2 Row 9! If it does not exist in List2, then #N/A is displayed.

| STOCK LIST 1 | PRICE | MATCH | | STOCK LIST 2 | COST |
|--------------|---------|-------|----|--------------|-------|
| Tel2154 | \$3,449 | 2 | 1 | Tab4577 | \$565 |
| Lap5468 | \$5,664 | #N/A | 2 | Tel2154 | \$515 |
| Tab4577 | \$5,830 | 1 | 3 | Lap000 | \$574 |
| Mon45657 | \$7,496 | 9 | 4 | Dro000 | \$984 |
| Dro424 | \$9,553 | #N/A | 5 | Mon45645 | \$899 |
| Tel2135 | \$9,644 | 6 | 6 | Tel2135 | \$646 |
| Lap5456 | \$8,600 | 7 | 7 | Lap5456 | \$524 |
| Tab4598 | \$2,990 | #N/A | 8 | Tab000 | \$503 |
| Mon45645 | \$6,282 | 5 | 9 | Mon45657 | \$933 |
| Dro4255 | \$7,760 | 10 | 10 | Dro4255 | \$904 |

Named Ranges with VLOOKUP Function

What does it do?

Searches for a value in the first column of a table array and returns a value in the same row from another column (to the right) in the table array.

Formula breakdown:

=VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup])

What it means:

=VLOOKUP(this value, in this Named Range, and get me value in this column, Exact Match/FALSE/0)

Example:

=VLOOKUP("Laptop",StockList,2,FALSE)

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

A **Named Range** makes it easier to understand Excel formulas, especially if the said formula contains an array argument.

A **Named Range** can be a cell, a cell range, a Table, a function or a constant.

STEP 1: To **define a Named Range** in Excel you need to select the cell/cell range/Table/function/constant and go to the **Name Box** which is located on the top left hand corner of the workbook - next to the **Formula Bar**.

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with a named range 'Stock List' defined over a table of items. The 'Name Box' on the left shows 'Stock List' and the 'Formula Bar' is empty. To the right, a summary table calculates the total price for each item.

| Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
|--------|----------|-------|-------------|
| Laptop | 125 | | \$0 |
| Tablet | 35 | | \$0 |
| | | Total | \$0 |

STEP 2: In here you can name your range whatever you like (make sure there are no spaces) and press **Enter**. You can view your **Named Range** by clicking on the drop down box in the **Name Box**. In our example we will give this a name of **StockList**.



You can also **view/edit/delete your Named Range** by going to the **Formulas** tab in the Ribbon menu and selecting **Name Manager**.

STEP 3: Now that you are all set, each time you are creating a formula, like a Vlookup formula, it is best to use a **Named Range** as it makes the formula easier to understand and maintain.

We need to **enter the Vlookup function**:

=VLOOKUP(

| | Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
|--------------|--------|----------|--------------|-------------|
| lookup_value | Laptop | | =VLOOKUP(| |
| lookup_value | Tablet | 35 | | \$0 |
| | | | Total | \$0 |

The Vlookup arguments:

lookup_value

What are we looking for?

Reference the cell that contains the text or value:

=VLOOKUP(G15,

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with a table array and a VLOOKUP formula. The table array is located in cells B13:D17 and contains the following data:

| col_index_1 | col_index_2 | col_index_3 |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Stock List | Price | Cost |
| television | \$150 | \$85 |
| laptop | \$185 | \$95 |
| tablet | \$215 | \$90 |
| Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 |

The VLOOKUP formula is shown in cell I13: `=VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup])`. The lookup value is 'Laptop' in cell G15. The formula is being entered into cell H15, and the result is '\$0'.

table_array

From which list are we doing a lookup on?

Place in the Named Range of the Stock List:

`=VLOOKUP(G15, StockList,`

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with a table array and a VLOOKUP formula. The table array is located in cells B13:D17 and contains the following data:

| col_index_1 | col_index_2 | col_index_3 |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Stock List | Price | Cost |
| television | \$150 | \$85 |
| laptop | \$185 | \$95 |
| tablet | \$215 | \$90 |
| Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 |

The VLOOKUP formula is shown in cell I13: `=VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup])`. The lookup value is 'Laptop' in cell G15. The formula is being entered into cell H15, and the result is '\$0'.

col_index_num

From which column do we want to retrieve the value?

We want to retrieve the Price which is the SECOND column from our table array:

`=VLOOKUP(G15, StockList, 2,`

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K |
|----|---|-------------------|--------------|-------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12 | | col_index_1 | col_index_2 | col_index_3 | | | | | =VLOOKUP(lookup_value,table_array,col_index_num,[range_lookup]) | | |
| 13 | | Stock List | Price | Cost | | | | | | | |
| 14 | | Television | \$150 | \$85 | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | Laptop | \$185 | \$95 | | | | | | | |
| 16 | | Tablet | \$215 | \$90 | | | | | | | |
| 17 | | Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 | | | | | | | |

| | Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
|--------------|--------|----------|---------------------------|-------------|
| lookup_value | Laptop | | =VLOOKUP(G15,StockList,2, | |
| lookup_value | Tablet | 35 | | \$0 |
| | | | Total | \$0 |

[range_lookup]

Do we want an exact match?

Place in FALSE to signify that we want an exact match:

=VLOOKUP(G15, StockList, 2, FALSE)

| | Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
|--------------|--------|---------------------------------|-------|-------------|
| lookup_value | L | =VLOOKUP(G15,StockList,2,FALSE) | | |
| lookup_value | Tablet | 35 | | \$0 |
| | | | Total | \$0 |

The price now dynamically changes based on your selection:

| | col Index 1 | col Index 2 | col Index 3 | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------|----------|-------|-------------|
| table_array | Stock List | Price | Cost | | Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
| | Television | \$150 | \$85 | | Laptop | 175 | 185 | \$23,125 |
| | Laptop | \$185 | \$75 | lookup_value | Tablet | 35 | | \$0 |
| | Tablet | \$245 | \$90 | lookup_value | | | | |
| | Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 | | | | Total | \$23,125 |

REPT

What does it do?

Repeats text a given number of times

Formula breakdown:

=REPT(text, number_times)

What it means:

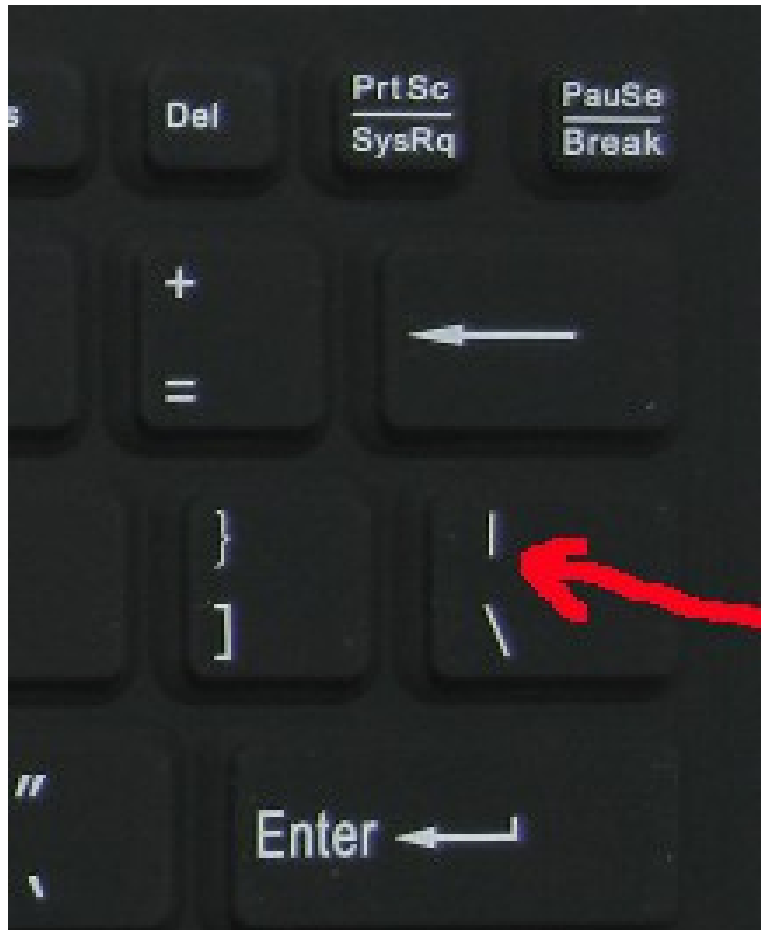
=REPT(the text to repeat, number of times the text will be repeated)

Example:

=REPT("a", 3) ="aaa"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)



STEP 3: Reference the value cell for the second argument

=REPT("|", b6)

STEP 4: Highlight the formula column and **insert the Stencil font** from the Home menu and choose a font color

STEP 5: If your value cells are high, the bar will go out of your screen. To fix this, you need to enter a divisor in the second argument of your formula which will reduce the length

=REPT("|", b6/5)

MONTH

SALES

CHART

January

\$125

`=REPT("|",[@SALES]/5)`

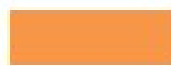
February

\$330



March

\$161



April

\$584



May

\$455



June

\$213



July

\$345



August

\$160



Sum a Range Using the INDEX Function

What does it do?

You can sum a range of values within a table using the INDEX function in Excel. This is valuable when you want to extract key metrics from a table and put them in an Excel Dashboard.

To make this work you firstly need to start your Excel formula with the SUM function followed by the INDEX function.

So it will look something like this:

```
=SUM(INDEX(Array, Row_Num, Column_Num))
```

The **Array** will be your table of data, the **Row_Num** will be blank and the **Column_Num** will be the column number where you want to SUM the values.

When we dissect the formula (by highlighting the INDEX function and pressing F9) we can see that the following is happening:
=SUM({8959;7840;7507;6690;5802;5487;3949;3836;3587;3210})

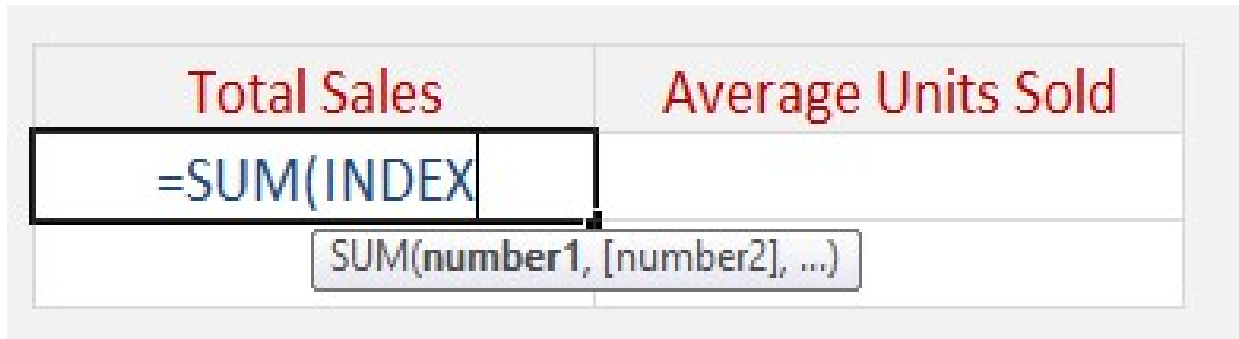
So in effect we are summing the array of values within the table. See the example below that shows you how this is done.

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

STEP 1: We need to place first the **INDEX** function inside the **SUM** function.

=SUM(INDEX



The Index arguments:

array

What is the range / table?

Reference the range of cells here that we want to get the values from:

=SUM(INDEX(\$C\$12:\$E\$21,

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with a table of Top 10 Customers. The columns are labeled 'Sales' and 'Units'. The formula **=SUM(INDEX(\$C\$12:\$E\$21,** is shown in a cell, and the INDEX function arguments are explained in a callout box.

| row_num | Top 10 Customers | Sales | Units |
|---------|---------------------|---------|-------|
| 1 | Monby Corp | \$8,914 | 884 |
| 2 | Spacely Sprockets | \$7,810 | 976 |
| 3 | Kumatsu Motors | \$7,507 | 689 |
| 4 | St. Anky Beer | \$6,690 | 588 |
| 5 | Mr. Sparkle | \$5,802 | 555 |
| 6 | Sto Plains Holdings | \$5,487 | 578 |
| 7 | ARC Telecom | \$1,949 | 778 |
| 8 | Volelectrik | \$1,816 | 218 |
| 9 | Sample, inc | \$3,587 | 235 |
| 10 | Demo Company | \$3,210 | 115 |

The callout box explains the INDEX function arguments:

- INDEX(array, row_num, [column_num])**
- INDEX(reference, row_num, [column_num], [array_num])**

row_num

What is the row number we want to return?

We do not need to return the row, as we want to just sum all of the sales. Leave the row number blank:

=SUM(INDEX(\$C\$12:\$E\$21,,

| Total Sales | Average Units Sold |
|---|--------------------|
| =SUM(INDEX(\$C\$12:\$E\$21,, | |
| INDEX(array, row_num, [column_num]) | |
| INDEX(reference, row_num, [column_num], [area_num]) | |

column_num

What is the column number we want to return?

Since we want the sales column, this is column number 2. So place in 2:

=SUM(INDEX(\$C\$12:\$E\$21,,2))

| | | | column_num | | | |
|----|----|---------------------|------------|-------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | | |
| | | Top 10 Customers | Sales | Units | Total Sales | Average Units Sold |
| 12 | 1 | Monkey Corp | \$8,959 | 884 | =SUM(INDEX(\$C\$12:\$E\$21,,2)) | INDEX(array, row_num, [column_num]) |
| 13 | 2 | Spacely Sprockets | \$7,810 | 976 | | |
| 14 | 3 | Kumatsu Motors | \$7,507 | 680 | | |
| 15 | 4 | St. Anky Beer | \$6,690 | 588 | | |
| 16 | 5 | Mr. Sparkle | \$5,802 | 555 | | |
| 17 | 6 | Six Plains Holdings | \$5,487 | 578 | | |
| 18 | 7 | ADC Telecom | \$3,949 | 378 | | |
| 19 | 8 | Videlectrix | \$3,836 | 238 | | |
| 20 | 9 | Sample, Inc | \$3,587 | 235 | | |
| 21 | 10 | Demo Company | \$3,210 | 115 | | |

Now you are able to get the **Total Sales**:

| | | column_num | | | | |
|---------|----|---------------------|---------|-------|-------------|--------------------|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | | |
| | | Top 10 Customers | Sales | Units | Total Sales | Average Units Sold |
| row_num | 1 | Mooby Corp | \$8,959 | 884 | 56,867 | |
| | 2 | Spacely Sprockets | \$7,810 | 976 | | |
| | 3 | Kumatsu Motors | \$7,507 | 689 | | |
| | 4 | St. Anky Beer | \$6,690 | 588 | | |
| | 5 | Mr. Sparkle | \$5,802 | 555 | | |
| | 6 | Sto Plains Holdings | \$5,487 | 578 | | |
| | 7 | ABC Telecomm | \$3,919 | 778 | | |
| | 8 | Videlectrix | \$3,836 | 238 | | |
| | 9 | Sample, inc | \$3,587 | 235 | | |
| | 10 | Demo Company | \$3,210 | 115 | | |

array/table/range

STEP 2: Now let us try how we can use this with the **AVERAGE** function. We need to place first the **INDEX** function inside the **AVERAGE** function.

=AVERAGE(INDEX

| Total Sales | Average Units Sold |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| 56,867 | =AVERAGE(INDEX(|
| | INDEX(array, row_num) |
| | INDEX(reference, row_num) |

The Index arguments:

array

What is the range / table?

Reference the range of cells here that we want to get the values from:

=AVERAGE(INDEX(\$C\$12:\$E\$21,

| | | column_num | | |
|--|----|---------------------|---------|-----|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| | 1 | Mooby Corp | \$8,959 | 884 |
| | 2 | Spacely Sprockets | \$7,840 | 976 |
| | 3 | Kumatsu Motors | \$7,507 | 689 |
| | 4 | St. Anky Beer | \$6,690 | 588 |
| | 5 | Mr. Sparkle | \$5,802 | 555 |
| | 6 | Six Plains Holdings | \$5,487 | 578 |
| | 7 | ABC Telecom | \$3,919 | 278 |
| | 8 | Videobornic | \$3,836 | 278 |
| | 9 | Sample, inc | \$3,587 | 235 |
| | 10 | Demo Company | \$3,210 | 115 |

| Total Sales | Average Units Sold |
|-------------|---|
| 5 | =AVERAGE(INDEX(\$C\$12:\$E\$21, row_num, column_num)) |

row_num

What is the row number we want to return?

We do not need to return the row, as we want to just average all of the units. Leave the row number blank:

=AVERAGE(INDEX(\$C\$12:\$E\$21,,

| Total Sales | Average Units Sold |
|-------------|---|
| 5 | =AVERAGE(INDEX(\$C\$12:\$E\$21,, column_num)) |

column_num

What is the column number we want to return?

Since we want the units column, this is column number 3. So place in 3:

=AVERAGE(INDEX(\$C\$12:\$E\$21,,3))

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|----|---|-------------------------|--------------|--------------|---|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| 9 | | | | column_num | | | | |
| 10 | | | 1 | 2 | 3 | | | |
| 11 | | | Top 10 Customers | Sales | Units | | | |
| 12 | 1 | | Mooby Corp | \$8,959 | 884 | | Total Sales | Average Units Sold |
| 13 | 2 | | Spacely Sprockets | \$7,840 | 976 | | 5 | =AVERAGE(INDEX(\$C\$12:\$E\$21,,3)) |
| 14 | 3 | | Kumatsu Motors | \$7,507 | 689 | | | AVERAGE(number1, [number2], ...) |
| 15 | 4 | | St. Anky Beer | \$6,690 | 588 | | | |
| 16 | 5 | | Mr. Sparkle | \$5,802 | 555 | | | |
| 17 | 6 | | Sto Plains Holdings | \$5,487 | 578 | | | |
| 18 | 7 | | ABC Telecom | \$3,949 | 278 | | | |
| 19 | 8 | | Videlectrix | \$3,836 | 738 | | | |
| 20 | 9 | | Sample, Inc | \$3,587 | 235 | | | |
| 21 | 10 | | Demo Company | \$3,210 | 115 | | | |

Now you are able to get the **Average Units Sold**:

| | | | 1 | 2 | 3 | | |
|----|--|--|-------------------------|--------------|--------------|--|--------------------|
| | | | Top 10 Customers | Sales | Units | | |
| 1 | | | Mooby Corp | \$8,959 | 884 | | Total Sales |
| 2 | | | Spacely Sprockets | \$7,840 | 976 | | 56,867 |
| 3 | | | Kumatsu Motors | \$7,507 | 689 | | Average Units Sold |
| 4 | | | St. Anky Beer | \$6,690 | 588 | | 514 |
| 5 | | | Mr. Sparkle | \$5,802 | 555 | | |
| 6 | | | Sto Plains Holdings | \$5,487 | 578 | | |
| 7 | | | ABC Telecom | \$3,949 | 278 | | |
| 8 | | | Videlectrix | \$3,836 | 738 | | |
| 9 | | | Sample, Inc | \$3,587 | 235 | | |
| 10 | | | Demo Company | \$3,210 | 115 | | |

SUMPRODUCT: Sum Multiple Criteria

What does it do?

It returns the sum of multiple criteria from the corresponding ranges or arrays

Formula breakdown:

=SUMPRODUCT((array 1 criteria) * (array2 criteria) * array values)

What it means:

=SUMPRODUCT((find my criteria in this array) * (find my criteria in that array) * return the values from the values array)

Example:

=SUMPRODUCT((B15:B23="john")*(C15:C23="north")*(E15:E23=1)*D15:D23)

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The SUMPRODUCT function is my favorite Excel function by a stretch! You can create some powerful calculations with the SUMPRODUCT function by creating a criteria for a selected array. For example, you can see how much sales your sales rep did in a particular region and for a particular quarter without having to create a Pivot Table.

It takes some practice to get comfortable with this function but when you master it, it opens up another Excel world!

In our example, we want to get the **total sales of John in the North Region in Q1**:

What is the total sales for JOHN in the NORTH REGION in Q1?

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt |
|-----------|--------|---------|-----|
| John | North | \$2,500 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$3,456 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$9,854 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,569 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$1,458 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,562 | 1 |

STEP 1: We need to enter the SUMPRODUCT function:

=SUMPRODUCT(

What is the total sales for JOHN in the NORTH REGION in Q1?

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt |
|-----------|--------|---------|-----|
| John | North | \$2,500 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$3,456 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$9,854 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,560 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$1,458 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,562 | 1 |

Answer:

+SUMPRODUCT({

SUMPRODUCT(array1, [array2], [array3], ...)

STEP 2: Create the criteria for the Sales Rep "John":

=SUMPRODUCT((B15:B23="john")*

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I |
|----|---|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|---|---|---|---|
| 13 | | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | | | |
| 15 | | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | | Answer: | | |
| 16 | | Paul | South | \$3,450 | | | +SUMPRODUCT((B15:B23="john")* | | |
| 17 | | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | SUMPRODUCT(array1, [array2], [array3], ...) | | |
| 18 | | George | South | \$9,854 | 4 | | | | |
| 19 | | John | North | \$2,569 | 1 | | | | |
| 20 | | Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 | | | | |
| 21 | | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | | |
| 22 | | George | South | \$1,458 | 4 | | | | |
| 23 | | John | North | \$2,562 | 1 | | | | |

Create the criteria for the **Region "North"**:

=SUMPRODUCT((B15:B23="john")*(C15:C23="north")*

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J |
|----|---|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|---|---|---|---|---|
| 13 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | | | | |
| 15 | | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | | Answer: | | | |
| 16 | | Paul | South | | | | +SUMPRODUCT((B15:B23="john")*(C15:C23="north")* | | | |
| 17 | | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | | | SUMPRODUCT(array1, [array2], [array3], ...) | | | |
| 18 | | George | South | \$9,854 | 4 | | | | | |
| 19 | | John | North | \$2,569 | 1 | | | | | |
| 20 | | Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 | | | | | |
| 21 | | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | | | |
| 22 | | George | South | \$1,458 | 4 | | | | | |
| 23 | | John | North | \$2,562 | 1 | | | | | |

Create the criteria for the **Quarter "1"**:

=SUMPRODUCT((B15:B23="john")*(C15:C23="north")*(E15:E23=1)*

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J |
|----|---|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|---|--------------------|---|---|---|
| 13 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | | | | |
| 15 | | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | | Answer: | | | |
| 16 | | Paul | South | \$3,156 | 2 | | =SUMPRODUCT((B15: | | | |
| 17 | | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | B23="john")*(C15: | | | |
| 18 | | George | South | \$9,854 | 4 | | C23="north")*(E15: | | | |
| 19 | | John | North | \$2,560 | 1 | | E23=1)* | | | |
| 20 | | Paul | South | \$1,125 | 2 | | | | | |
| 21 | | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | | | |
| 22 | | George | South | \$1,418 | 4 | | | | | |
| 23 | | John | North | \$2,567 | 1 | | | | | |

Create the sum array to total the values of the **Sales** column:

=SUMPRODUCT((B15:B23="john")*(C15:C23="north")*(E15:E23=1)*D15:D23)

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J |
|----|---|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|---|--------------------|---|---|---|
| 13 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | | Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt | | | | | |
| 15 | | John | North | \$2,500 | 1 | | Answer: | | | |
| 16 | | Paul | South | \$3,156 | 2 | | =SUMPRODUCT((B15: | | | |
| 17 | | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | B23="john")*(C15: | | | |
| 18 | | George | South | \$9,851 | 4 | | C23="north")*(E15: | | | |
| 19 | | John | North | \$2,560 | 1 | | E23=1)*D15:D23) | | | |
| 20 | | Paul | South | \$1,125 | 2 | | | | | |
| 21 | | Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 | | | | | |
| 22 | | George | South | \$1,158 | 4 | | | | | |
| 23 | | John | North | \$2,562 | 1 | | | | | |

Once your formula is complete, you can see that it magically calculated the sum of the matching values!

What is the total sales for JOHN in the NORTH REGION in Q1?

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt |
|-----------|--------|---------|-----|
| John | North | \$2,500 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$3,456 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$9,854 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,569 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$1,458 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,562 | 1 |

Answer:
\$7,631

SUMPRODUCT: Sum the Top 3 Sales

What does it do?

It returns the sum of multiple criteria from the corresponding range or array

Formula breakdown:

={SUMPRODUCT(Nested Formula((array 1 criteria) * array values))}

What it means:

={SUMPRODUCT(Return me the largest three values from(Region array)
* Sales array)}

Example:

={SUMPRODUCT(LARGE((C15:C23="north")*(D15:D23),{1,2,3}))}

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

This is probably the most advanced level a SUMPRODUCT function can reach and that is by including a nested array formula.

In our example below we want to return the 3 Largest values from the North region and sum them up. As we are asking our formula to perform multiple calculations i.e. *Get the Largest 3 values or large((array,{1,2,3}))*, then an array formula is used. So to make this formula work we need to finish it off by pressing CTRL+SHIFT+ENTER

Here is our data set to get the **sum of the top 3 sales in the north region:**

What's the SUM of the TOP 3 sales in the NORTH region?

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt |
|-----------|--------|---------|-----|
| John | North | \$2,500 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$3,456 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$9,854 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,569 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$1,458 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,562 | 1 |

STEP 1: We need to enter the SUMPRODUCT function:

=SUMPRODUCT(

Example:

What's the SUM of the TOP 3 sales in the NORTH region?

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt |
|-----------|--------|---------|-----|
| John | North | \$2,500 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$3,156 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$9,851 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,569 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$1,458 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,562 | 1 |

Answer:

=SUMPRODUCT(LARGE(

SUMPRODUCT(array1,array2,array3,...)

* Press Ctrl+Shift+Enter to calculate the answers

STEP 2: Enter the **LARGE** function:

=SUMPRODUCT(LARGE(

9 Example:

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

What's the SUM of the TOP 3 sales in the NORTH region?

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt |
|-----------|--------|---------|-----|
| John | North | \$2,500 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$3,456 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$9,854 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,569 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$4,175 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$1,458 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,562 | 1 |

Answer:

=SUMPRODUCT(LARGE(

Press Ctrl+Shift+Enter to calculate

STEP 3: Create the criteria for **Region “North”**:

=SUMPRODUCT(LARGE((C15:C23="north")*

Example:

What's the SUM of the TOP 3 sales in the NORTH region?

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt. |
|-----------|--------|---------|------|
| John | North | \$2,500 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$3,156 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$1,854 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,569 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$1,158 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,567 | 1 |

Answer:

=SUMPRODUCT(LARGE((C15:C23="north")*

* Press Ctrl-Shift-Enter to calculate the answer as an

Create the Sales Array:

=SUMPRODUCT(LARGE((C15:C23="north")*(D15:D23),

Example:

What's the SUM of the TOP 3 sales in the NORTH region?

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt |
|-----------|--------|---------|-----|
| John | North | \$2,500 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$3,156 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$9,874 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,549 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$1,125 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$1,458 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,562 | 1 |

Answer:

=SUMPRODUCT(LARGE((C15:C23="north")*(D15:D23),{1,2,3}))

LARGE(array,k)

Excel 2010: What's the sum of the top 3 sales in the north?

Enter the Top 3 values {1,2,3}:

=SUMPRODUCT(LARGE((C15:C23="north")*(D15:D23),{1,2,3}))

Example: What's the SUM of the TOP 3 sales in the NORTH region?

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt |
|-----------|--------|---------|-----|
| John | North | \$2,500 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$3,156 | 2 |
| Kingo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$9,854 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,509 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 |
| Kingo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$1,158 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,502 | 1 |

Answer:

* Press CTRL+SHIFT+Enter to calculate the answer as it is an array formula

STEP 4: Press **CTRL + SHIFT + ENTER** to ensure this gets calculated as an array formula:

=SUMPRODUCT(LARGE((C15:C23="north")*(D15:D23),{1,2,3}))

Example:

What's the SUM of the TOP 3 sales in the NORTH region?

| Sales Rep | Region | Sales | Qrt |
|-----------|--------|---------|-----|
| John | North | \$7,500 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$3,450 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$9,854 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,569 | 1 |
| Paul | South | \$4,125 | 2 |
| Ringo | North | \$2,568 | 3 |
| George | South | \$1,418 | 4 |
| John | North | \$2,562 | 1 |

Answer:
\$7,705

Press Ctrl+Shift to enter or calculate the answer as a

You now have the sum of the top 3 sales in the North region!

TIME – Get Elapsed Time

What does it do?

Converts a formula to text and lets you specify the display formatting by using special format strings

Formula breakdown:

=TEXT(value1 - value2, format text)

What it means:

=TEXT(formula, a text string enclosed in quotation marks)

Example:

=TEXT("1/25/2015 8:18:00 PM"-"1/24/2015 7:48:00 PM", "[h]:mm")
="24:30"

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

When you have two points in time and you want to calculate the amount of time elapsed, then you will need to use Excel's [TEXT function](#)

Sometimes data gets dumped into Excel with the following date & time format:

24/01/2015 19:48:00.

Using the **TEXT** function and entering a special text string can give you the time elapsed in Days, Hours, Minutes and Hours & Minutes.

See below how easy this is to implement.

STEP 1: Enter the following to get the elapsed time in days:

We need to enter the **TEXT** function in a blank cell:

`=TEXT(B12-A12, "dd")`

value1 is the **end date time**

value2 is the **start date time**

format text is "**dd**" which signifies **days**

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|-----------------|-----------------|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 9 | Example: | | | | |
| 10 | | | "dd" | "[hh]" | "[h]:mm" |
| 11 | START TIME | END TIME | Elapsed Time (Days) | Elapsed Time (Hrs) | Elapsed Time (Hrs & Mins) |
| 12 | 24/1/15 7:48 PM | 25/ | =TEXT(B12-A12, "dd") | | |
| 13 | 16/2/15 8:18 PM | 26/2/15 8:25 PM | | | |
| 14 | 18/3/15 8:18 PM | 26/3/15 9:33 PM | | | |
| 15 | 1/1/15 3:37 AM | 31/1/15 4:30 AM | | | |
| 16 | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | |
| 18 | | | | | |

STEP 2: Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|-----------------|-----------------|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 9 | Example: | | | | |
| 10 | | | "dd" | "[hh]" | "[h]:mm" |
| 11 | STARTTIME | END TIME | Elapsed Time (Days) | Elapsed Time (Hrs) | Elapsed Time (Hrs & Mins) |
| 12 | 24/1/15 7:48 PM | 25/1/15 8:18 PM | 01 | | |
| 13 | 16/2/15 8:18 PM | 26/2/15 8:25 PM | 10 | | |
| 14 | 18/3/15 8:18 PM | 26/3/15 9:33 PM | 08 | | |
| 15 | 1/1/15 3:37 AM | 31/1/15 4:30 AM | 30 | | |

STEP 3: Enter the following to get the elapsed time in hours:

We need to enter the **TEXT** function in a blank cell:

=TEXT(B12-A12, "[hh])

value1 is the **end date time**

value2 is the **start date time**

format text is "**[hh]**" which signifies **hours**

| | A | B | C | D | F |
|----|-----------------|-----------------|------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 9 | Example: | | | | |
| 10 | | | "dd" | "[hh]" | "[h]:mm" |
| 11 | START TIME | END TIME | Elapsed Time (Days) | Elapsed Time (Hrs) | Elapsed Time (Hrs & Mins) |
| 12 | 24/1/15 7:48 PM | 25/1/15 8:18 PM | | =TEXT(B12 - A12, "[hh]") | |
| 13 | 16/2/15 8:18 PM | 26/2/15 8:25 PM | 10 | | |
| 14 | 18/3/15 8:18 PM | 26/3/15 9:33 PM | 08 | | |
| 15 | 1/1/15 3:37 AM | 31/1/15 4:30 AM | 30 | | |

STEP 4: Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards.

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|-----------------|-----------------|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 9 | <i>Example:</i> | | | | |
| 10 | | | "dd" | "[hh]" | "[h]:mm" |
| 11 | START TIME | END TIME | Elapsed Time (Days) | Elapsed Time (Hrs) | Elapsed Time (Hrs & Mins) |
| 12 | 24/1/15 7:48 PM | 25/1/15 8:18 PM | 01 | 24 | |
| 13 | 16/2/15 8:18 PM | 26/2/15 8:25 PM | 10 | 240 | |
| 14 | 18/3/15 8:18 PM | 26/3/15 9:33 PM | 08 | 193 | |
| 15 | 1/1/15 3:37 AM | 31/1/15 4:30 AM | 30 | 720 | |
| 16 | | | | | |

STEP 5: Enter the following to get the elapsed time in hours and minutes:

We need to enter the **TEXT** function in a blank cell:

=TEXT(B12-A12, "[h]:mm")

value1 is the **end date time**

value2 is the **start date time**

format text is "[h]:mm" which signifies **hours and minutes**

| | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|-----------------|-----------------|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|---|
| 9 | <i>Example:</i> | | | | | |
| 10 | | | "dd" | "[hh]" | "[h]:mm" | |
| 11 | START TIME | END TIME | Elapsed Time (Days) | Elapsed Time (Hrs) | Elapsed Time (Hrs & Mins) | |
| 12 | 24/1/15 7:48 PM | 25/1/15 8:18 PM | 01 | | =TEXT(B12-A12, "[h]:mm") | |
| 13 | 16/2/15 8:18 PM | 26/2/15 8:25 PM | 10 | 240 | | |
| 14 | 18/3/15 8:18 PM | 26/3/15 9:33 PM | 08 | 193 | | |
| 15 | 1/1/15 3:37 AM | 31/1/15 4:30 AM | 30 | 720 | | |

STEP 6: Apply the same formula to the rest of the cells by dragging the lower right corner downwards. And your elapsed time results are all ready!

| | A | B | C | D | E |
|----|-----------------|-----------------|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 9 | Example: | | | | |
| 10 | | | "dd" | "[hh]" | "[b]:mm" |
| 11 | STARTTIME | END TIME | Elapsed Time (Days) | Elapsed Time (Hrs) | Elapsed Time (Hrs & Mins) |
| 12 | 24/1/15 7:48 PM | 25/1/15 8:18 PM | 01 | 24 | 24:30 |
| 13 | 16/2/15 8:18 PM | 26/2/15 8:25 PM | 10 | 240 | 240:07 |
| 14 | 18/3/15 8:18 PM | 26/3/15 9:33 PM | 08 | 193 | 193:15 |
| 15 | 1/1/15 3:37 AM | 31/1/15 4:30 AM | 30 | 720 | 720:53 |
| 16 | | | | | |

TRANSPOSE

What does it do?

Converts a vertical range of cells to horizontal, or vice versa

Formula breakdown:

=TRANSPOSE(array)

What it means:

=TRANSPOSE(the horizontal or vertical range of cells that you want to flip the orientation)

Example:

{=TRANSPOSE(A9:B13)}

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

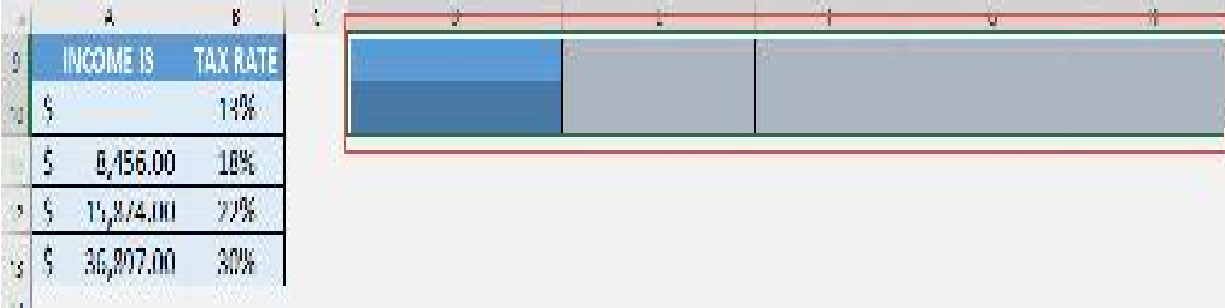
Let us say you have a horizontal table, and you want to flip it to become a vertical table, did you know that there is an Excel formula that can do that for you? That's right, let us use the **TRANSPOSE Formula!**

Whenever you use this function, you should treat it as an **array formula** and it is very easy to do! You can use this to transform your horizontal table to a vertical table, or the other way around from a vertical table to a horizontal one.

I explain how you can do this below:

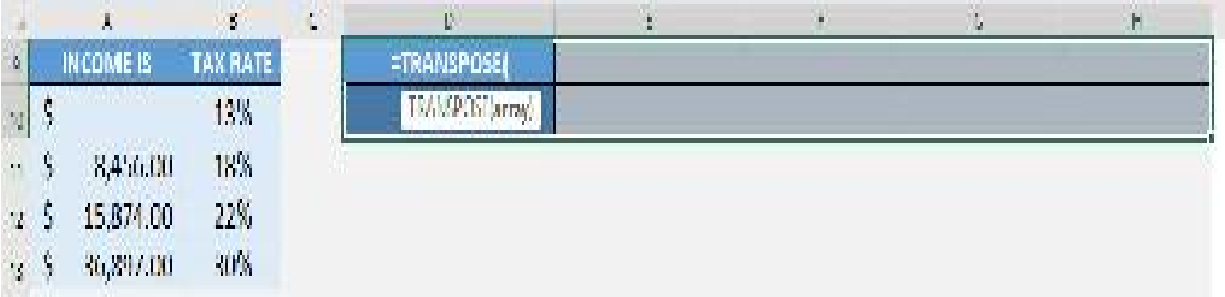
STEP 1: Make sure to select your target table first with the same number of cells.

You can see we have selected a **horizontal table** that has the same number of cells (5 by 2) when compared to the original **vertical table** (2 by 5):



While it is selected, we need to **enter the TRANSPOSE function:**

=TRANSPOSE(



STEP 2: The **TRANSPOSE** arguments:

array

What is the range of cells that contains the data?

Select the cells containing the data that you want to flip the orientation:

=TRANSPOSE(A9:B13)

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|--------------|----------|---|--------------------|---|---|---|---|
| 9 | INCOME IS | TAX RATE | | =TRANSPOSE(A9:B13) | | | | |
| 10 | \$ | 13% | | | | | | |
| 11 | \$ 8,156.00 | 18% | | | | | | |
| 12 | \$ 15,871.00 | 22% | | | | | | |
| 13 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | | | | | |

STEP 3: Once you finish typing the formula, ensure you press **CTRL + SHIFT + ENTER** for this to be treated as an **array formula**:

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|--------------|----------|---|-------------------|------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 9 | INCOME IS | TAX RATE | | INCOME IS GREATER | \$ - | \$ 8,156.00 | \$ 15,871.00 | \$ 36,897.00 |
| 10 | \$ | 13% | | TAX RATE | 13% | 18% | 22% | 30% |
| 11 | \$ 8,156.00 | 18% | | | | | | |
| 12 | \$ 15,871.00 | 22% | | | | | | |
| 13 | \$ 36,897.00 | 30% | | | | | | |

Your table now has a horizontal orientation with just the **TRANSPOSE Formula!**

VLOOKUP Approximate Match

What does it do?

Searches for an approximate value in the first column of a table array and returns a value in the same row from another column (to the right) in the table array.

Formula breakdown:

=VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup])

What it means:

=VLOOKUP(this value, in this list, and get me value in this column, Approximate Match/TRUE/1)

Example:

=VLOOKUP(8500, Tax_Rate, 2, TRUE)

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The VLOOKUP Function in Excel is great when you want to find an exact match in your data table but what happens if you want to find an approximate match?

Approximate matches are used when you have an ascending table like *Commission Bonus Rates* or *Income Tax Rates*.

IMPORTANT: For the Vlookup Approximate Match to work in Excel, the *table_array* has to be sorted in ascending order!

So the way that this formula works is that it looks at the first value in the *Table_Array* that is greater than the *Lookup_Value* and then goes back one value.

STEP 1: We need to enter the **VLOOKUP** function in a blank cell:

=VLOOKUP(

| Income is Greater than or Equal to... | Tax Rate |
|---------------------------------------|----------|
| \$0 | 13% |
| \$8,456 | 18% |
| \$15,874 | 27% |
| \$36,807 | 30% |
| \$87,458 | 39% |
| \$141,560 | 45% |

Enter Income: \$8,500 (lookup value)

Tax Rate: =VLOOKUP(

VLOOKUP(lookup value, table array, col index num, [range lookup])

STEP 2: The **VLOOKUP** arguments:

lookup_value

What is the value to be looked up?

Select the cell that contains the income as the lookup value.

=VLOOKUP(F14,

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with a table of tax rates and a VLOOKUP formula. A text box asks for the tax rate for a given income value. The table has two columns: 'Income Is Greater than or Equal to...' and 'Tax Rate'. The VLOOKUP formula is shown as '=VLOOKUP(F14, B14:C19, 2, 1)'. The formula bar shows the formula being entered: '=VLOOKUP(F14, B14:C19, 2, 1)'. The table data is as follows:

| Income Is Greater than or Equal to... | Tax Rate |
|---------------------------------------|----------|
| \$0 | 13% |
| \$8,450 | 18% |
| \$15,874 | 22% |
| \$30,897 | 30% |
| \$87,158 | 35% |
| \$141,509 | 45% |

table_array

Where is the list of data?

Select the tax table, as that is where our formula is going to get the tax rate.

=VLOOKUP(F14, B14:C19,

Example:

Get me the TAX RATE for an INCOME value!

| col index 1 | col index 2 |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| Income is Greater than or Equal to... | Tax Rate |
| \$0 | 13% |
| \$8,450 | 18% |
| \$15,874 | 22% |
| \$36,817 | 30% |
| \$87,158 | 35% |
| \$191,560 | 45% |

table_array

Enter Income

\$8,500 (Input value)

Tax Rate

=VLOOKUP(F14, B14:C19, 2)

VLOOKUP(table_array, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup])

col_index_num

Which column in the table_array contains the data you want to return?

We want the tax rate which is the second column.

=VLOOKUP(F14, B14:C19, 2,

Example:

Get me the TAX RATE for an INCOME value!

| col_index_1 | col_index_2 |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| Income is Greater than or Equal to... | Tax Rate |
| \$0 | 10% |
| \$8,456 | 18% |
| \$15,874 | 22% |
| \$16,897 | 30% |
| \$87,458 | 39% |
| \$141,560 | 45% |

Enter Income

\$8,100 (lookup value)

Tax Rate

VLOOKUP(F14, B14:C19, 2,)

VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup])

[range_lookup]

Would it be an approximate match?

Set this to TRUE as we want an approximate match.

=VLOOKUP(F14, B14:C19, 2, TRUE)

Example:

Get me the TAX RATE for an INCOME value!

| Income Is Greater than or Equal to... | Tax Rate |
|---------------------------------------|----------|
| \$0 | 13% |
| \$8,456 | 18% |
| \$15,871 | 22% |
| \$36,897 | 30% |
| \$87,458 | 30% |
| \$141,569 | 45% |

Table Array

Enter Income

\$8,500 (lookup_value)

Tax Rate

`=VLOOKUP(F14, B14:C19, 2, TRUE)`

You now have your tax rate!

Example:

Get me the TAX RATE for an INCOME value!

| col_index_1 | col_index_2 |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| Income is Greater than or Equal to... | Tax Rate |
| \$0 | 13% |
| \$8,456 | 18% |
| \$15,874 | 27% |
| \$36,897 | 30% |
| \$87,458 | 39% |
| \$141,569 | 45% |

tax rate array

Enter Income

\$8,500

lookup value

Tax Rate

18%

VLOOKUP with a Drop Down List

What does it do?

Searches for a value in the first column of a table array and returns a value in the same row from another column (to the right) in the table array.

Formula breakdown:

=VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup])

What it means:

=VLOOKUP(this value, in this list, and get me value in this column, Exact Match/FALSE/0])

Example:

=VLOOKUP("Keyboard",B14:D17,2,FALSE)

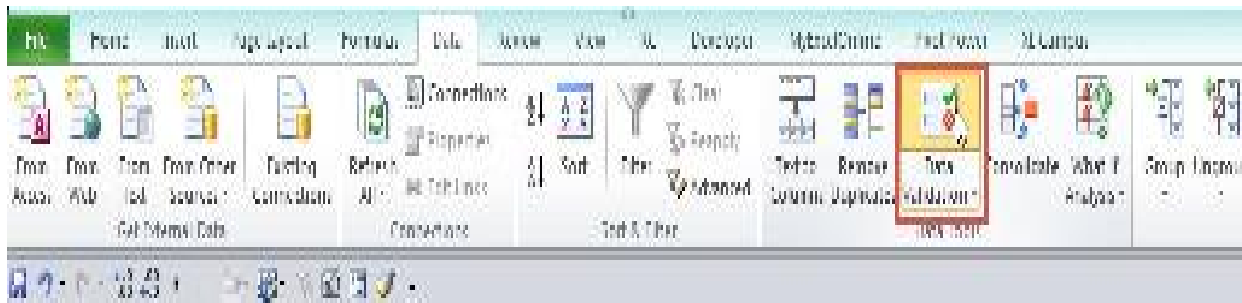
Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The VLOOKUP function in Excel can become interactive and more powerful when applying a **Data Validation** (drop down menu/list) as the **Lookup_Value**. So as you change your selection from the drop down list, the VLOOKUP value also changes.

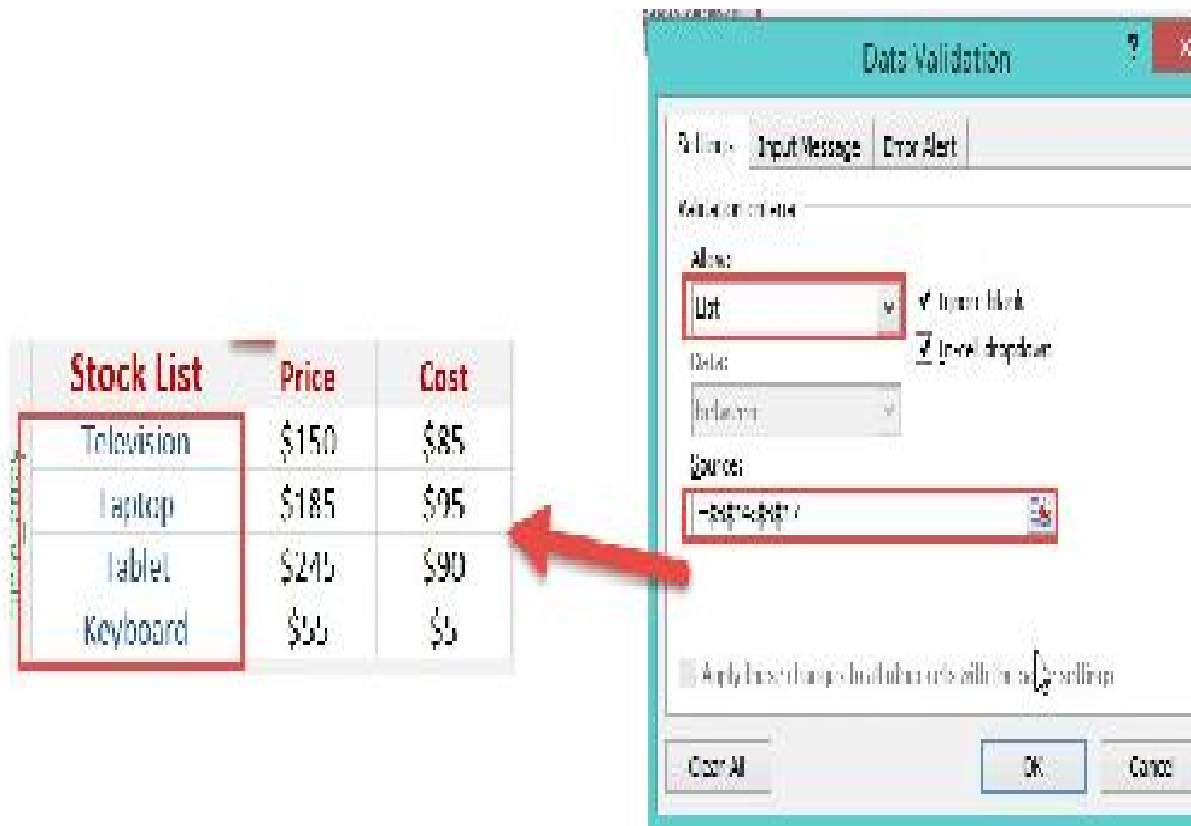
See how easy it is to apply this with a quick VLOOKUP example below.

STEP 1: Go to **Data > Data Validation**.



STEP 2: Select **List** in the **Allow dropdown**.

For the **Source**, ensure that it has the 4 Stock List values selected. Click **OK**.



Your dropdown is ready.

| John's Order | | | | |
|--------------|------------|----------|-------|-------------|
| | Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
| lookup_value | Laptop | 125 | | \$0 |
| lookup_value | Television | | | \$0 |
| | Laptop | | | \$0 |
| | Tablet | | | \$0 |
| | Keyboard | | | \$0 |
| | Total | | | \$0 |

STEP 3: We need to enter the *VLOOKUP* function:

=VLOOKUP(

VLOOKUP(**lookup value**, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup])

John's Order

| | Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
|--------------|----------|----------|-----------|-------------|
| lookup_value | Keyboard | | +VLOOKUP(| |
| lookup_value | | | | \$0 |
| | | | Total | \$0 |

The VLOOKUP arguments:

lookup_value

What are we looking for?

Reference the cell that contains the text or value:

=VLOOKUP(G15,

| | Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
|--------------|----------|----------|---------------|-------------|
| lookup_value | Keyboard | | +VLOOKUP(G15, | |
| lookup_value | | | | \$0 |
| | | | Total | \$0 |

table_array

From which list are we doing a lookup on?

Place in the cell range of the Stock List:

=VLOOKUP(G15, **\$B\$14:\$D\$17,**

| Item | Price | Cost |
|------------|-------|------|
| Television | \$150 | \$85 |
| Laptop | \$185 | \$95 |
| Tablet | \$245 | \$90 |
| Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 |

| Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
|--------|----------|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| Laptop | 1 | +VLOOKUP(G15,\$B\$14:\$D\$17,1,TRUE) | |
| Tablet | | | \$0 |
| Total | | | \$0 |

col_index_num

From which column do we want to retrieve the value?

We want to retrieve the Price which is the SECOND column from our table array:

=VLOOKUP(G15, \$B\$14:\$D\$17, 2,

| Item | Price | Cost |
|------------|-------|------|
| Television | \$150 | \$85 |
| Laptop | \$185 | \$95 |
| Tablet | \$245 | \$90 |
| Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 |

| Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
|--------|----------|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| Laptop | 1 | +VLOOKUP(G15,\$B\$14:\$D\$17,2,TRUE) | |
| Tablet | | | \$0 |
| Total | | | \$0 |

[range_lookup]

Do we want an exact match?

Place in FALSE to signify that we want an exact match:

=VLOOKUP(G15, \$B\$14:\$D\$17, 2, FALSE)

| lol_index_1 | lol_index_2 | lol_index_3 |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Stock List | Price | Cost |
| Television | \$150 | \$85 |
| Laptop | \$185 | \$95 |
| Tablet | \$245 | \$90 |
| Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 |

| John's Order | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------|-------|-------------|
| Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
| =VLOOKUP(G15,\$D\$14:\$D\$17,2,FALSE) | | | |
| | | | \$0 |
| Total | | | \$0 |

The price now dynamically changes based on your selection:

Get me the PRICE of a LAPTOP & TABLET from the STOCK LIST!

| lol_index_1 | lol_index_2 | lol_index_3 |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Stock List | Price | Cost |
| Television | \$150 | \$85 |
| Laptop | \$185 | \$95 |
| Tablet | \$245 | \$90 |
| Keyboard | \$55 | \$5 |

| John's Order | | | |
|--------------|----------|-------|-------------|
| Item | Quantity | Price | Total Price |
| Keyboard | 125 | \$5 | \$6,875 |
| | | | \$0 |
| Total | | | \$6,875 |

VLOOKUP Multiple Columns

What does it do?

Searches for a value in the first column of a table array and returns the sum of values in the same row from other columns (to the right) in the table array.

Formula breakdown:

```
{=SUM(VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, {col_index_num1,col_index_num2}, [range_lookup]))}
```

What it means:

```
{=SUM(VLOOKUP(this value, in this list, {and sum the value in this column, with the value in this column}, Exact Match/FALSE/0))}
```

Example:

```
{=SUM(VLOOKUP("Laptop",B14:D17,{2,3},FALSE))}
```

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The VLOOKUP function can be combined with other functions such as the **Sum**, **Max** or **Average** to calculate values in multiple columns. As this is an array formula, to make it work we simply need to press **CTRL+SHIFT+ENTER** at the end of the formula. A very powerful feature for any serious analyst!

See how easy it is to implement in less than 1 minute with this VLOOKUP example!

We want to get the total number of units for Laptop (16,700 + 18,700 units).

STEP 1: We need to enter the **VLOOKUP** function in a blank cell:

=VLOOKUP(

Example: Get the TOTAL UNITS SOLD for a LAPTOP in 2013 & 2014!

| Units Sold | 2013 | 2014 |
|------------|--------|--------|
| Television | 24,500 | 13,000 |
| Laptop | 16,700 | 18,700 |
| Tablet | 7,000 | 8,400 |
| Keyboard | 5,500 | 6,000 |

| Item | Total Units | Min Units | Avg Units |
|--------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| Laptop | =VLOOKUP(| | |

* Press Ctrl+Shift+Enter to calculate the array in this row array formula.
 * Microsoft Excel 2010 with Windows. Microsoft reserves all rights.

STEP 2: The **VLOOKUP** arguments:

lookup_value

What is the value to be looked up?

Select the cell that contains the item name, which is Laptop.

=VLOOKUP(G15,

Example:

Get me the TOTAL UNITS SOLD for a LAPTOP in 2013 & 2014!

| col_index_1 | col_index_2 | col_index_3 |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Units Sold | 2013 | 2014 |
| Television | 24,500 | 33,000 |
| Laptop | 16,700 | 18,700 |
| Tablet | 2,500 | 8,100 |
| Keyboard | 5,500 | 6,000 |

John's Order

| Item | Total Units | Max Units | Avg Units |
|--------|--|-----------|-----------|
| Laptop | =VLOOKUP(G15, B14:D17, 1) | | |
| | =SUMPRODUCT(table_array, col_index_num, range_array) | | |

* Press Ctrl+Shift+Enter to calculate the answer as the array formula
 NB: You can also replace Sum with Average, Max or Min instead of SUM (if you)

table_array

Where is the list of data?

Select the Units Sold table, as that is where our formula is going to get the unit numbers.

=VLOOKUP(G15, B14:D17,

Example:

Get me the TOTAL UNITS SOLD for a LAPTOP in 2013 & 2014!

| col_index_1 | col_index_2 | col_index_3 |
|-------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Units Sold | 2013 | 2014 |
| Television | 24,500 | 33,000 |
| Laptop | 16,700 | 18,700 |
| Tablet | 2,500 | 8,100 |
| Keyboard | 5,500 | 6,000 |

John's Order

| Item | Total Units | Max Units | Avg Units |
|--------|--|-----------|-----------|
| Laptop | =VLOOKUP(G15, B14:D17, 1) | | |
| | =SUMPRODUCT(table_array, col_index_num, range_array) | | |

* Press Ctrl+Shift+Enter to calculate the answer as the array formula
 NB: You can also replace Sum with Average, Max or Min instead of SUM (if you)

{col_index_num1, col_index_num2}

Which columns in the table_array contains the data you want to return?

We want to get the unit numbers of Years 2013 and 2014. So that will be columns 2 and 3.

=VLOOKUP(G15, B14:D17, {2,3},

Example: Get me the TOTAL UNITS SOLD for a LAPTOP in 2013 & 2014!

| Units Sold | 2013 | 2014 |
|------------|--------|--------|
| Television | 24,500 | 34,000 |
| Laptop | 16,700 | 18,700 |
| Tablet | 2,500 | 8,400 |
| Keyboard | 5,500 | 6,000 |

John's Order

| Item | Total Units | Max Units | Avg Units |
|--------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| Laptop | 24,500 | | |

Formula: =VLOOKUP(G15, B14:D17, {2,3},

Result: 24,500

Press Ctrl+Shift+Enter to calculate the answer as this is an array formula

Tip: You can also replace Ctrl with Average, Shift with If, and Enter with Ctrl+Shift+Enter

[range_lookup]

Would it be an approximate match?

Set this to **FALSE** as we want an exact match for Laptop.

=VLOOKUP(G15, B14:D17, {2,3}, FALSE)

Example: Get me the TOTAL UNITS SOLD for a LAPTOP in 2013 & 2014!

| Units Sold | 2013 | 2014 |
|------------|--------|--------|
| Television | 24,500 | 34,000 |
| Laptop | 16,700 | 18,700 |
| Tablet | 2,500 | 8,400 |
| Keyboard | 5,500 | 6,000 |

John's Order

| Item | Total Units | Max Units | Avg Units |
|--------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| Laptop | 16,700 | | |

Formula: =VLOOKUP(G15, B14:D17, {2,3}, FALSE)

Result: 16,700

Press Ctrl+Shift+Enter to calculate the answer as this is an array formula

Tip: You can also replace Ctrl with Average, Shift with If, and Enter with Ctrl+Shift+Enter

STEP 3: Now wrap the formula with the **SUM formula** as we want to get the total number of sold units for Laptop.

=SUM(VLOOKUP(G15, B14:D17, {2,3}, FALSE))

Ensure you are pressing **CTRL+SHIFT+ENTER** as we want to calculate this as an array formula.

The screenshot shows an Excel spreadsheet with the following data:

| Units Sold | 2013 | 2014 |
|------------|--------|--------|
| Television | 14,000 | 13,000 |
| Laptop | 16,000 | 18,000 |
| Tablet | 2,000 | 0,000 |
| Keyboard | 1,000 | 6,000 |

The formula bar shows: `=SUM(VLOOKUP(G15, B14:D17, {2,3}, FALSE))`

John's Order

| Item | Total Units | Max Units | Avg. Units |
|------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| | | | |

Notes:
 * Press Ctrl+Shift+Enter to calculate the values of this formula array formula.
 * To focus on a value inside an array formula, click the cell with the value.

Do the exact same formula for **Max Units** and **Average Units**, by changing the **SUM Formula** with the **MAX Formula** and **Average Formula** respectively.

Example:

Get me the TOTAL UNITS SOLD for a LAPTOP in 2013 & 2014!

| | Units Sold | 2013 | 2014 |
|------------|------------|--------|--------|
| Television | | 21,500 | 33,000 |
| Laptop | | 10,000 | 18,000 |
| Tablet | | 2,500 | 8,000 |
| Keyboard | | 5,000 | 6,000 |

array

John's Order

| Item | Total Units | Max Units | Avg Units |
|--------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| Laptop | 35,400 | 18,000 | 17,000 |
| Tablet | | | |

Array formula to calculate the order as this is an array formula

VLOOKUP with Multiple Criteria

What does it do?

Searches for a value in the first column of a table array and returns a value in the same row from another column (to the right) in the table array.

Formula breakdown:

=VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup])

What it means:

=VLOOKUP(this value, in this list, and get me value in this column, Exact Match/FALSE/0])

Example:

=VLOOKUP("Nate Harris"&"HR",C:D,2,FALSE)

Exercise Workbook:

[DOWNLOAD EXCEL WORKBOOK](#)

The challenging thing with VLOOKUP, is we are unable to **add more than one 'criteria'** to search for our value. For example, if we would be searching for 'Nate Harris' in our employee table, we would not want to search the entire table.

Instead, we want to search for 'Nate Harris' but only in the 'Sales department' of the company. This means that we have **two criteria for the search** ('Nate Harris' and 'Sales department').

VLOOKUP cannot do this if you do this the normal way! Thankfully, we can **concatenate the different criteria** so you can use them as a single lookup value.

The concatenation will be done with the **ampersand (&)**. We can get creative and create a helper column for this!

The game plan is to make a separate column that joins the data from the '**Full name**' column and the '**Department**' column, as seen in our table below.

| | A | B | C | |
|----|-------------------|------------|-----------|--|
| 1 | Full name | Department | Salary | |
| 2 | Abigail Aalderink | Sales | \$ 60,569 | |
| 3 | Sanford Bartolo | Sales | \$ 81,603 | |
| 4 | Samuel Bartnick | Sales | \$ 86,281 | |
| 5 | John Dumas | IT | \$ 84,186 | |
| 6 | Kristi Hines | Production | \$ 85,775 | |
| 7 | Apple Lyn | IT | \$ 75,144 | |
| 8 | Lee Nazal | HR | \$ 82,162 | |
| 9 | Lindsay Kline | Marketing | \$ 98,915 | |
| 10 | Vicky James | HR | \$ 83,207 | |
| 11 | Bradley Sack | IT | \$ 64,717 | |
| 12 | Steven Lamar | Sales | \$ 64,931 | |
| 13 | Tom Briones | IT | \$ 70,988 | |
| 14 | Mike O'Neil | HR | \$ 72,254 | |

See how easy it is using our VLOOKUP example.

STEP 1: Let us create our helper column. Insert a column after the Department Column.

Enter this into **cell C2** and copy it down to the rest of the rows in the data.

`=A2&B2`

| | A | B | C | D |
|----|------------------|------------|---------------|-----------|
| 1 | Full name | Department | Helper column | Salary |
| 2 | Abigail Alderink | Sales | =A2&B2 | \$ 60,569 |
| 3 | Sanford Bartolo | Sales | | \$ 81,603 |
| 4 | Samuel Bartnick | Sales | | \$ 86,281 |
| 5 | John Dumas | IT | | \$ 84,186 |
| 6 | Kristi Hines | Production | | \$ 85,775 |
| 7 | Apple Lyn | IT | | \$ 75,144 |
| 8 | Lee Nazal | HR | | \$ 82,162 |
| 9 | Lindsay Kline | Marketing | | \$ 98,915 |
| 10 | Vicky James | HR | | \$ 83,207 |
| 11 | Bradley Sack | IT | | \$ 64,717 |
| 12 | Steven Lamar | Sales | | \$ 64,931 |
| 13 | Tom Bringer | IT | | \$ 70,000 |

STEP 2: We need to enter the **VLOOKUP** function:

`=VLOOKUP(`

| F | G | H | I |
|---|------------------|------------------|---|
| Formula | Criteria1 | Criteria2 | |
| =VLOOKUP(| | | |
| VLOOKUP(lookup_value, table_array, col_index_num, [range_lookup]) | | | |

The VLOOKUP arguments:

lookup_value

What are we looking for?

Reference the cell that contains the text or value. Since we are looking in our helper column, ensure your lookup value is a combination of the full name and department:

=VLOOKUP(G2&H2,

| F | G | H |
|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| Formula | Criteria1 | Criteria2 |
| =VLOOKUP(G2&H2, | Nate Harris | HR |

table_array

From which list are we doing a lookup on?

Place in the cell range of the helper column and the salary list:

=VLOOKUP(G2&H2, C:D,

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|---|-----------------|------------|------------------------|-----------|---|---|-----------|-----------|
| 1 | Full name | Department | Helper column | Salary | | Formula | Criteria1 | Criteria2 |
| 2 | Ahigail Baldwin | Sales | Ahigail BaldwinSales | \$ 60,500 | | =VLOOKUP(G2&H2, C:D, 2, | | HR |
| 3 | Sanford Bartolo | Sales | Sanford BartoloSales | \$ 81,600 | | <small>VLOOKUP looks for the lookup value in the first column of the table array, and then returns the value in the second column of the table array.</small> | | |
| 4 | Samuel Bartnick | Sales | Samuel BartnickSales | \$ 86,281 | | | | |
| 5 | John Dumas | IT | John DumasIT | \$ 84,186 | | | | |
| 6 | Kristi Hines | Production | Kristi HinesProduction | \$ 85,775 | | | | |
| 7 | Apple Lynn | IT | Apple LynnIT | \$ 75,244 | | | | |
| 8 | Lee Naval | IT | Lee NavalIT | \$ 95,165 | | | | |

col_index_num

From which column do we want to retrieve the value?

We want to retrieve the Salary which is the SECOND column from our table array:

=VLOOKUP(G2&H2, C:D, 2,

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|---|-----------------|------------|------------------------|-----------|---|---|-----------|-----------|
| 1 | Full name | Department | Helper column | Salary | | Formula | Criteria1 | Criteria2 |
| 2 | Ahigail Baldwin | Sales | Ahigail BaldwinSales | \$ 60,500 | | =VLOOKUP(G2&H2, C:D, 2, | | HR |
| 3 | Sanford Bartolo | Sales | Sanford BartoloSales | \$ 81,600 | | <small>VLOOKUP looks for the lookup value in the first column of the table array, and then returns the value in the second column of the table array.</small> | | |
| 4 | Samuel Bartnick | Sales | Samuel BartnickSales | \$ 86,281 | | | | |
| 5 | John Dumas | IT | John DumasIT | \$ 84,186 | | | | |
| 6 | Kristi Hines | Production | Kristi HinesProduction | \$ 85,775 | | | | |

[range_lookup]

Do we want an exact match?

Place in FALSE to signify that we want an exact match:

=VLOOKUP(G2&H2, C:D, 2, FALSE)

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|---|------------------|------------|------------------------|-----------|---|-------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 | Full name | Department | Helper column | Salary | | Formula | Criteria1 | Criteria2 |
| 2 | Abigail Alderink | Sales | Abigail AlderinkSales | \$ 60,569 | | =VLOOKUP(G2&H2,C10:J,4,FALSE) | HR | |
| 3 | Sanford Bartolo | Sales | Sanford BartoloSales | \$ 81,603 | | | | |
| 4 | Samuel Bartnick | Sales | Samuel BartnickSales | \$ 86,781 | | | | |
| 5 | John Dumas | IT | John DumasIT | \$ 84,186 | | | | |
| 6 | Kristi Hines | Production | Kristi HinesProduction | \$ 85,775 | | | | |
| 7 | Apple Lyn | IT | Apple LynIT | \$ 75,144 | | | | |

With this, you are now able to get the salary using multiple criteria (full name and department)!

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H |
|----|------------------|------------|------------------------|-----------|---|---------|-------------|-----------|
| 1 | Full name | Department | Helper column | Salary | | Formula | Criteria1 | Criteria2 |
| 2 | Abigail Alderink | Sales | Abigail AlderinkSales | \$ 60,569 | | 70556 | Nate Harris | HR |
| 3 | Sanford Bartolo | Sales | Sanford BartoloSales | \$ 81,603 | | | | |
| 4 | Samuel Bartnick | Sales | Samuel BartnickSales | \$ 86,781 | | | | |
| 5 | John Dumas | IT | John DumasIT | \$ 84,186 | | | | |
| 6 | Kristi Hines | Production | Kristi HinesProduction | \$ 85,775 | | | | |
| 7 | Apple Lyn | IT | Apple LynIT | \$ 75,144 | | | | |
| 8 | Lee Nazal | HR | Lee NazalHR | \$ 82,162 | | | | |
| 9 | Lindsay Kline | Marketing | Lindsay KlineMarketing | \$ 98,915 | | | | |
| 10 | Vicky James | HR | Vicky JamesHR | \$ 83,207 | | | | |
| 11 | Bradley Sack | IT | Bradley SackIT | \$ 64,717 | | | | |
| 12 | Steven Lamar | Sales | Steven LamarSales | \$ 64,931 | | | | |
| 13 | Tom Briones | IT | Tom BrionesIT | \$ 70,988 | | | | |
| 14 | Mike O'Neil | HR | Mike O'NeilHR | \$ 72,751 | | | | |
| 15 | Fily Kam | Adm | Fily KamAdm | \$ 63,434 | | | | |
| 16 | Steven Davidson | Adm | Steven DavidsonAdm | \$ 62,687 | | | | |
| 17 | Nate Harris | HR | Nate HarrisHR | \$ 70,556 | | | | |
| 18 | Bryan Sloane | IT | Bryan SloaneIT | \$ 74,243 | | | | |
| 19 | Chris Borgogni | Sales | Chris BorgogniSales | \$ 89,758 | | | | |
| 20 | ... | ... | ... | ... | | | | |

LEARN EXCEL FOR ONLY

\$1

ACCESS 300+
VIDEOS NOW 

JOHN MICHALOUDIS
Chief Inspirational Officer
MyExcelOnline



Table of Contents

[COPYRIGHT](#)

[SPECIAL SALES](#)

[MYEXCELONLINE ACADEMY COURSE](#)

[CONNECT WITH US](#)

[AUTHOR BIOGRAPHY](#)

[HOW TO USE THIS E-BOOK](#)

[Formulas VS Functions](#)

[FORMULA TIPS](#)

[The Function Wizard](#)

[F9 to Evaluate a Formula](#)

[Named Ranges](#)

[Absolute & Relative References](#)

[Evaluate Formulas Step By Step](#)

[Highlight All Excel Formula Cells](#)

[How to Convert Formulas to Values](#)

[How to Show & Hide Formulas in Excel](#)

[Jump to a Cell Reference in a Formula](#)

[LOOKUP FUNCTIONS](#)

[ADDRESS](#)

[CHOOSE](#)

[HLOOKUP](#)

[HYPERLINK](#)

[INDEX](#)

[INDEX-MATCH](#)

[INDIRECT](#)

[LOOKUP](#)

[MATCH](#)

[VLOOKUP](#)

[LOGICAL FUNCTIONS](#)

[AND](#)

[IF](#)

[IFERROR](#)

[OR](#)

MATH FUNCTIONS

COUNT

COUNTA

COUNTBLANK

COUNTIF

COUNTIFS

MOD

PERCENTAGE

RAND

RANDBETWEEN

ROUND

SUBTOTAL

SUMIF

SUMIFS

SUMPRODUCT

STATISTICAL FUNCTIONS

AVERAGE

LARGE

MAX

MEDIAN

MIN

SMALL

DATE & TIME FUNCTIONS

DATE

DATEDIF

DATEVALUE

DAY

DAY360

DAYS

ENDOFMONTH

HOUR

MONTH

NETWORKDAYS

TODAY

WEEKDAY

WEEKNUM

WORKDAY

YEAR

TEXT FUNCTIONS

CLEAN

CONCATENATE

EXACT

FIND

LEFT

LEN

LOWER

MID

PROPER

REPLACE

RIGHT

SEARCH

SUBSTITUTE

TRIM

UPPER

VALUE

ISBLANK

ISERROR

ISNUMBER

ISTEXT

TYPE

OTHER FUNCTIONS

FV – Compound Interest

FV – Monthly Investment

EXCEL 2019

CONCAT

IFS

MAXIFS

MINIFS

SWITCH

TEXTJOIN

OFFICE 365 (AS OF SEPTEMBER 2018)

FILTER

RANDARRAY

SEQUENCE

[SORT](#)

[SORTBY](#)

[UNIQUE](#)

[ADVANCED FORMULAS](#)

[3D Formulas](#)

[ARRAY Formulas](#)

[BETWEEN](#)

[Extract First Name from Full Name](#)

[Extract Last Name - REPLACE Function](#)

[GETPIVOTDATA](#)

[IF Combined With The AND Function](#)

[INDEX-MATCH 2 Criteria with Validation](#)

[Match Two Lists With MATCH Function](#)

[Named Ranges with VLOOKUP Function](#)

[REPT](#)

[Sum a Range Using the INDEX Function](#)

[SUMPRODUCT: Sum Multiple Criteria](#)

[SUMPRODUCT: Sum the Top 3 Sales](#)

[TIME – Get Elapsed Time](#)

[TRANSPOSE](#)

[VLOOKUP Approximate Match](#)

[VLOOKUP with a Drop Down List](#)

[VLOOKUP Multiple Columns](#)

[VLOOKUP with Multiple Criteria](#)